



Revelation

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	16
Introduction to Revelation	16
Revelation 1 General Notes	32
Revelation 1:1-3	34
Revelation 1:4-6	36
Revelation 1:7-8	38
Revelation 1:9-11	40
Revelation 1:12-13	42
Revelation 1:14-16	43
Revelation 1:17-18	45
Revelation 1:19-20	46
Revelation 2 General Notes	47
Revelation 2:1-2	49
Revelation 2:3-5	51
Revelation 2:6-7	53
Revelation 2:8-9	54
Revelation 2:10-11	56
Revelation 2:12-13	58
Revelation 2:14-15	60
Revelation 2:16-17	62
Revelation 2:18-19	64
Revelation 2:20-21	66
Revelation 2:22-23	67
Revelation 2:24-25	69
Revelation 2:26-29	70
Revelation 3 General Notes	72
Revelation 3:1-2	74
Revelation 3:3-4	76
Revelation 3:5-6	78
Revelation 3:7-8	80
Revelation 3:9-11	82
Revelation 3:12-13	84
Revelation 3:14-16	86
Revelation 3:17-18	88
Revelation 3:19-20	90
Revelation 3:21-22	91
Revelation 4 General Notes	93
Revelation 4:1-3	94
Revelation 4:4-5	96
Revelation 4:6	98

Table of Contents

Revelation 4:7-8	99
Revelation 4:9-11	101
Revelation 5 General Notes	103
Revelation 5:1-2	104
Revelation 5:3-5	106
Revelation 5:6-7	108
Revelation 5:8	110
Revelation 5:9-10	111
Revelation 5:11-12	113
Revelation 5:13-14	115
Revelation 6 General Notes	117
Revelation 6:1-2	118
Revelation 6:3-4	120
Revelation 6:5-6	121
Revelation 6:7-8	123
Revelation 6:9-11	124
Revelation 6:12-14	126
Revelation 6:15-17	128
Revelation 7 General Notes	130
Revelation 7:1-3	131
Revelation 7:4-6	133
Revelation 7:7-8	135
Revelation 7:9-10	136
Revelation 7:11-12	138
Revelation 7:13-14	140
Revelation 7:15-17	142
Revelation 8 General Notes	144
Revelation 8:1-2	145
Revelation 8:3-5	146
Revelation 8:6-7	148
Revelation 8:8-9	149
Revelation 8:10-11	151
Revelation 8:12	152
Revelation 8:13	153
Revelation 9 General Notes	154
Revelation 9:1-2	156
Revelation 9:3-4	158
Revelation 9:5-6	160
Revelation 9:7-9	162
Revelation 9:10-12	163
Revelation 9:13-15	165
Revelation 9:16-17	167
Revelation 9:18-19	169

Revelation 9:20-21	170
Revelation 10 General Notes	172
Revelation 10:1-2	173
Revelation 10:3-4	175
Revelation 10:5-7	176
Revelation 10:8-9	178
Revelation 10:10-11	179
Revelation 11 General Notes	180
Revelation 11:1-2	182
Revelation 11:3-5	184
Revelation 11:6-7	186
Revelation 11:8-9	188
Revelation 11:10-12	189
Revelation 11:13-14	191
Revelation 11:15	192
Revelation 11:16-17	194
Revelation 11:18	196
Revelation 11:19	198
Revelation 12 General Notes	199
Revelation 12:1-2	200
Revelation 12:3-4	201
Revelation 12:5-6	202
Revelation 12:7-9	203
Revelation 12:10	205
Revelation 12:11-12	207
Revelation 12:13-14	209
Revelation 12:15-18	210
Revelation 13 General Notes	212
Revelation 13:1-2	213
Revelation 13:3-4	215
Revelation 13:5-6	217
Revelation 13:7-8	218
Revelation 13:9-10	220
Revelation 13:11-12	222
Revelation 13:13-14	224
Revelation 13:15-17	225
Revelation 13:18	227
Revelation 14 General Notes	228
Revelation 14:1-2	229
Revelation 14:3-5	231
Revelation 14:6-7	233
Revelation 14:8	235
Revelation 14:9-10	236

Table of Contents

Revelation 14:11-12	238
Revelation 14:13	240
Revelation 14:14-16	241
Revelation 14:17-18	243
Revelation 14:19-20	244
Revelation 15 General Notes	245
Revelation 15:1	246
Revelation 15:2	247
Revelation 15:3-4	249
Revelation 15:5-6	251
Revelation 15:7-8	252
Revelation 16 General Notes	254
Revelation 16:1	255
Revelation 16:2	256
Revelation 16:3	257
Revelation 16:4-7	258
Revelation 16:8-9	260
Revelation 16:10-11	262
Revelation 16:12-14	264
Revelation 16:15-16	266
Revelation 16:17-19	268
Revelation 16:20-21	270
Revelation 17 General Notes	271
Revelation 17:1-2	272
Revelation 17:3-5	274
Revelation 17:6-7	276
Revelation 17:8	277
Revelation 17:9-10	278
Revelation 17:11	280
Revelation 17:12-14	281
Revelation 17:15	283
Revelation 17:16-17	284
Revelation 17:18	286
Revelation 18 General Notes	287
Revelation 18:1-3	288
Revelation 18:4-6	290
Revelation 18:7-8	292
Revelation 18:9-10	294
Revelation 18:11-13	296
Revelation 18:14	298
Revelation 18:15-17	299
Revelation 18:18-20	301
Revelation 18:21-22	303

Revelation 18:23-24	305
Revelation 19 General Notes	307
Revelation 19:1-2	308
Revelation 19:3-4	310
Revelation 19:5	312
Revelation 19:6	314
Revelation 19:7-8	315
Revelation 19:9-10	317
Revelation 19:11-13	319
Revelation 19:14-16	321
Revelation 19:17-18	323
Revelation 19:19-20	325
Revelation 19:21	327
Revelation 20 General Notes	328
Revelation 20:1-3	330
Revelation 20:4	332
Revelation 20:5-6	334
Revelation 20:7-8	336
Revelation 20:9-10	337
Revelation 20:11-12	339
Revelation 20:13-15	341
Revelation 21 General Notes	343
Revelation 21:1-2	344
Revelation 21:3-4	345
Revelation 21:5-6	346
Revelation 21:7-8	348
Revelation 21:9-10	350
Revelation 21:11-13	352
Revelation 21:14-15	354
Revelation 21:16-17	355
Revelation 21:18-20	356
Revelation 21:21-22	358
Revelation 21:23-25	360
Revelation 21:26-27	361
Revelation 22 General Notes	362
Revelation 22:1-2	363
Revelation 22:3-5	365
Revelation 22:6-7	367
Revelation 22:8-9	369
Revelation 22:10-11	370
Revelation 22:12-13	372
Revelation 22:14-15	373
Revelation 22:16	375

Table of Contents

Revelation 22:17	376
Revelation 22:18-19	377
Revelation 22:20-21	379
translationQuestions	380
Revelation 1	380
Revelation 2	382
Revelation 3	385
Revelation 4	388
Revelation 5	390
Revelation 6	392
Revelation 7	394
Revelation 8	396
Revelation 9	398
Revelation 10	400
Revelation 11	401
Revelation 12	403
Revelation 13	405
Revelation 14	407
Revelation 15	409
Revelation 16	410
Revelation 17	412
Revelation 18	414
Revelation 19	416
Revelation 20	418
Revelation 21	420
Revelation 22	422
translationWords	424
twelve tribes of Israel	424
accuse, accusation, accuser	425
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	426
adversary, enemy	427
Almighty	428
altar	429
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished	430
amen, truly	431
angel, archangel	432
angry, anger	434
anoint, anointed	435
antichrist	436
apostle, apostleship	437
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh	438
Asher	439
Asia	440

authority	441
avenge, revenge, vengeance	442
Babylon, Babylonian	443
Balaam	444
barley	445
bear	446
beast	447
believe, believe in, belief	448
believer	449
beloved	451
Benjamin	452
blameless	453
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	454
bles, blessed, blessing	455
blood	457
bind, bond, bound	458
Book of Life	460
bow, bow down	461
bow and arrow	462
breastplate, breastpiece	463
breathe, breath	464
bride	466
bridegroom	467
bronze	468
brother	469
burden	470
call, calling, called, call out	471
captive, captivity	473
Translation Suggestions	474
chariot	475
children, child	476
Christ, Messiah	477
church, Church	479
clothe, clothed	481
command, to command, commandment	482
commander, command	483
commit, committed, commitment	484
condemn, condemnation	485
corrupt, corruption	486
courtyard, court	487
cow, calf, bull, cattle	488
create, creation, Creator	489
creature	490

Table of Contents

Translation Suggestions	491
crown, to crown	492
crucify	493
curse, cursed	494
darkness	495
David	496
death, die, dead	497
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	499
defile, be defiled	500
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	501
descendant, descended from	502
desert, wilderness	503
desolate, desolation	504
detestable, detest	505
devour	506
drunk, drunkard	507
eagle	508
earth, earthly	509
Egypt, Egyptian	510
elder	511
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect	512
endure, endurance	513
Ephesus	514
everlasting, eternal, eternity	515
Euphrates River	516
evil, wicked, wickedness	517
face	519
faith	521
faithful, faithfulness	523
faithless, faithlessness	524
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	525
false prophet	526
famine	527
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	528
fig	529
fire	530
firstborn	531
firstfruits	532
flesh	533
flood	534
flute, pipe	535
forever	536
sexual immorality	537

foundation, founded	538
fountain, spring	539
frankincense	540
free, freedom, liberty	541
fulfill	542
furnace	543
Gad	544
gate, gate bar	545
Gentile	546
gift	547
glorify	548
glory, glorious	549
God	550
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	552
gold	554
good news, gospel	555
grace, gracious	557
grape	558
Greek, Grecian	559
hades, sheol	560
hail	561
hard, hardness, harden	562
harp	563
harvest	564
head	565
heal, cure	567
heart	568
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	569
Hebrew	570
hell, lake of fire	571
holy city	572
holy, holiness	573
Holy One	574
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	575
honey, honeycomb	577
honor, to honor	578
horn, horns	579
horse	580
hour	581
idol, idolatrous	582
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	583
incense	584
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	585

Table of Contents

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	586
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	588
Issachar	589
Jerusalem	590
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	592
Jew, Jewish, Jews	594
Jezebel	595
John (the apostle)	596
Joseph (OT)	597
Judah	598
judge, judgment	599
judge	601
just, justice, justly	602
kind, kinds	603
kingdom	604
king	606
know, knowledge, make known	607
labor, laborer	608
labor pains, in labor	609
lamb, Lamb of God	610
lamp	612
lampstand	613
last day, last days, latter days	614
leopard	615
Levite, Levi	616
life, live, living, alive	617
light	619
like, likeness	620
lion	621
Lord	622
love	623
Manasseh	625
manna	626
Michael	627
mighty, might	628
mind	629
miracle, wonder, sign	630
Moses	632
mourn, mourning	633
myrrh	634
mystery, hidden truth	635
name	636
Naphtali	637

nation	638
oath, swear, swear by	639
obey, obedient, obedience	640
oil	641
olive	642
palm	643
patient, patience	644
peace, peaceful	645
people group, peoples, the people, a people	646
people of God, my people	648
pillar, column	649
pit	650
plague	651
power, powers	652
praise	653
pray, prayer	654
priest, priesthood	655
prince, princess	657
prison, prisoner, imprison	658
proclaim, proclamation	659
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	660
prostitute, harlot, whore	662
prostrate	663
proud, pride, prideful	664
punish, punishment	665
pure, purify, purification	667
queen	668
reap, reaper	669
receive	670
reed, reeds	671
reign	672
rejoice	673
repent, repentance	674
rest	675
resurrection	676
Reuben	677
reveal, revelation	678
reward	679
righteous, righteousness	680
right hand	681
robe	682
rod	683
ruler, rulers, rule	684

Table of Contents

sackcloth	685
sacrifice, offering	686
salvation	688
Satan, devil, evil one	689
scroll	691
seal, to seal	692
send, send out, sent	693
serpent, snake, viper	694
servant, slave, slavery	695
serve, service	697
shame, shameful, ashamed	698
sheep, ram, ewe	699
shepherd, to shepherd	700
sign, proof, reminder	702
silver	704
Simeon	705
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	706
slander, slanderer	708
slaughter	709
snow	710
Sodom	711
son, son of	712
Son of God, the Son, Son	714
Son of Man, son of man	716
sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft	717
soul	718
spirit, spiritual	719
splendor	721
strength, strengthen	722
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	724
suffer, suffering	725
sulfur	726
sword	727
synagogue	728
temple	729
tent	731
tent of meeting	732
terror, terrify	733
test	734
testimony, testify	735
thief, thieves, robber	736
throne	737
time	738

tomb, grave, burial place	739
torment	740
tribe	741
tribulation	742
true, truth, come true	743
trumpet	745
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	746
turn, turn away, turn back	747
unclean	748
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	749
unrighteous, unrighteousness	750
vine	751
vision	752
voice	753
walk	754
waste, wasteland	755
watch, watchman	756
water, waters	757
wheat	758
wine, wineskin, new wine	759
winepress	760
wise, wisdom	761
witness, eyewitness	762
woe	764
word	765
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	766
works, deeds, work, acts	768
world, worldly	769
worship	770
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	771
wrath, fury	772
written	773
Zebulun	774
Zion, Mount Zion	775
translationAcademy	776
First, Second or Third Person	776
Abstract Nouns	778
Active or Passive	781
Apostrophe	784
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	786
Double Negatives	788
Doublet	791
Ellipsis	793

Euphemism	795
Order of Events	797
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	800
Generic Noun Phrases	802
Go and Come	804
Idiom	806
Inclusive “We”	808
Merism	810
Metaphor	812
Metonymy	817
Parallelism	819
Personification	821
Reflexive Pronouns	823
Rhetorical Question	826
Simile	829
Synecdoche	832
Forms of You	834
Translating Son and Father	835
Biblical Distance	837
Biblical Money	840
Biblical Volume	842
Biblical Weight	846
Fractions	848
How to Translate Names	851
Numbers	855
Ordinal Numbers	858
Symbolic Action	861
Textual Variants	864
Copy or Borrow Words	867
Translate Unknowns	869
Symbolic Prophecy	872
Background Information	874
End of Story	877
Introduction of New and Old Participants	879
Quotations and Quote Margins	882
Symbolic Language	884

translationNotes

Introduction to Revelation

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of The Book of Revelation

1. Opening (1:1-20)
2. Letters to the seven churches (2:1-3:22)
3. Vision of God in heaven, and a vision of the Lamb (4:1-11)
4. The seven seals (6:1-8:1)
5. The seven trumpets (8:2-13:18)
6. Worshipers of the Lamb, the martyrs, and the harvest of wrath (14:1-20)
7. The seven bowls (15:1-18:24)
8. Worship in heaven (19:1-10)
9. The Lamb's judgment, the destruction of the beast, the thousand years, the destruction of Satan, and the final judgment (20:11-15)
10. The new creation, the new Jerusalem (21:1-22:5)
11. Jesus' promise to return, the witness from the angels, John's closing words, Christ's message to his church, the invitation and the warning (22:6-21)

What is the Book of Revelation about?

Revelation talks about “the end of time.” Many commentators understand this to be the entire period of the Christian church, because it has always been under attack. Other interpreters view Revelation's description of events as relating to a more tightly limited period closer to Christ's return to earth. While some of the book gives specific words of prophecy to churches, most of the events described in the book concern the wrath of God being poured out on creation. During this time, the opposition of the antichrist will unfold over a period of seven years. Ultimately, Jesus will be victorious, and all who put their trust in him will live forever with him. This book warns its readers and gives them assurance that God is in control. Eventually, evil and sin will come to an end. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “Revelation,” “The Revelation of Jesus Christ,” or “The Apocalypse of John.” Or they may choose a possibly clearer title, such as “The Things that Jesus Christ Showed to John.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Revelation?

The book of Revelation was probably written by the apostle John. He wrote the book of Revelation while on the island of Patmos, where he was exiled for preaching the good news about Jesus Christ.

What type of writing is the Book of Revelation?

John uses many images throughout the book to describe the things he saw. He uses a special style typical of writing about the end of this world. Many symbols and events symbolic of other events are usually present in such writing, as well as many dreams and visions.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Are the events of Revelation past or future?

Many scholars have very different theories about the Book of Revelation. Some treat the events of the book as symbols, while others treat them as being fulfilled (at least in part) by the destruction of the Jewish temple in AD 70. Others believe that the events of the book are entirely set into the future. It is probable that at least many of the events are still for future fulfillment, and that any fulfillment of these prophecies in the past was either partial or a foreshadowing of what would eventually come. If this is allowed by the project language's preferences, the translator should leave the prophecies in the tense they are found in the ULB.

How does the Book of Revelation relate to the rest of Scripture?

While the Book of Revelation is very different than the rest of Scripture, it is rooted in the Old Testament understanding of the end times. Revelation, Daniel, Ezekiel, Zechariah and a number of other books are all thematically related to each other; they form one cohesive account of the end times. Because of their shared imagery and background, it may be beneficial to translate Revelation about the same time that one translates Daniel.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Does one need to understand the Book of Revelation in order to translate it?

One does not need to have a definite understanding of the theology of the Book of Revelation in order to properly translate it. Symbols should not be given any possible identification to their meaning. The same holds true for numbers, which have great significance in the book of Revelation. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

How are the ideas of "holy" and "sanctify" represented in Revelation ULB?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, Revelation ULB uses the following principles:

- In one passage, the context mainly implies moral holiness. Here, the ULB uses “holy.” (See 22:11)
- Usually the context in Revelation mainly indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, Revelation ULB uses “believer” or “believers.” (See 5:8; 8:3, 4; 11:18; 13:7; 14:12; 16:6; 17:6; 18:20, 24; 19:8; 20:9)

As translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions, they will often be helped by the choices made in the ULB.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Revelation?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of Revelation:

- “‘I am the Alpha and the Omega,’ says the Lord God, ‘the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.’” (1:8) The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some versions add the phrase “the Beginning and the End.”
- “the elders lay down and worshiped” (5:14). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have, “the twenty-four elders lay down and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever.”
- “so that a third of it [the earth] was burned up” (8:7). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older versions omit this phrase.
- Some manuscripts add the phrase “and who is to come” (11:17). But the ULB, UDB, and most modern versions do not.
- Some manuscripts add the phrase “before the throne of God” (14:5). But the ULB, UDB, and most modern versions do not.
- “the one who is and who was, the Holy One” (ULB) (16:5). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older manuscripts read, “O Lord, The One who is and who was and who is to be.”
- “The nations will walk by the light of that city” (21:24). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older manuscripts read, “The nations that are saved will walk by the light of that city.”
- “Blessed are those who wash their robes” (22:14). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older manuscripts read “Blessed are those who do his commandments.”
- “God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city” (22:19). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. Some older manuscripts read, “God will take away his share in the book of life and in the holy city.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Periods of time

There are many different periods of time referenced in Revelation. For example, forty-two months, seven years, and three and a half days. Scholars are divided over whether or not these time periods are symbolic. The translator should treat these time periods as referencing actual periods of time.

It is then up to the interpreter to determine their significance or what they may represent. It is also probable that these time periods give the book of Revelation some overall structure but the exact chronology of these events is very difficult to determine.

List of translationAcademy Topics in Revelation

- * **First, Second or Third Person** is found in: 01:01
- * **Abstract Nouns** is found in: 01:04, 02:01, 02:08, 02:12, 02:18, 02:24, 05:11, 07:09, 09:05, 09:18, 12:11, 13:09, 13:18, 17:01, 17:08, 17:09, 18:15, 18:18
- * **Active or Passive** is found in: 03:05, 05:06, 05:09, 06:01, 06:03, 06:09, 07:04, 08:01, 08:06, 08:08, 08:13, 09:13, 09:20, 10:05, 11:01, 11:19, 12:01, 12:05, 12:07, 12:13, 13:03, 13:05, 13:07, 13:09, 13:11, 13:15, 14:01, 14:09, 14:14, 15:01, 15:03, 16:08, 16:12, 16:15, 16:17, 17:03, 17:08, 17:12, 17:16, 18:14, 18:15, 18:21, 18:23, 19:03, 19:09, 19:11, 19:14, 19:19, 19:21, 20:01, 20:04, 20:07, 20:09, 20:11, 20:13, 21:11, 21:18, 21:21, 21:23, 21:26, 22:18
- * **Apostrophe** is found in: 18:21
- * **Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding** is found in: 09:20, 11:16, 12:07, 16:08, 17:01
- * **Double Negatives** is found in: 21:26
- * **Doublet** is found in: 01:14, 04:09, 15:01
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 02:16, 09:03, 09:05, 19:03
- * **Order of Events** is found in: 01:14, 05:01
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:01, 02:18, 02:26, 03:03, 03:09, 09:03, 11:03, 11:16, 13:09, 13:15, 15:02, 15:07, 16:01, 16:15, 19:05, 19:09, 19:11, 20:01, 20:07, 22:06, 22:10, 22:17
- * **Generic Noun Phrases** is found in: 01:01, 02:06, 02:10, 02:16, 02:26, 03:05, 03:12, 03:21
- * **Go and Come** is found in: 03:19, 05:06
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:09, 02:22, 04:01, 20:07
- * **Inclusive “We”** is found in: 19:05
- * **Merism** is found in: 01:17, 02:08, 05:03, 05:13, 07:15, 12:10, 14:11, 19:05, 19:17, 20:11, 22:12
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 01:12, 01:17, 02:03, 02:06, 02:08, 02:10, 02:12, 02:14, 02:16, 02:20, 02:22, 02:24, 02:26, 03:01, 03:03, 03:05, 03:09, 03:12, 03:14, 03:17, 03:19, 03:21, 04:01, 04:06, 04:07, 05:03, 06:09, 06:15, 07:13, 07:15, 08:10, 08:12, 09:10, 10:01, 11:03, 11:06, 11:10, 11:13, 11:18, 12:05, 12:10, 12:11, 13:09, 14:03, 14:06, 14:08, 14:14, 15:02, 16:08, 16:10, 16:15, 17:01, 17:09, 17:11, 17:15, 17:16, 17:18, 18:01, 18:04, 18:07, 18:09, 18:14, 18:15, 18:21, 18:23, 19:01, 19:07, 19:09, 19:14, 21:05, 21:21, 21:23, 22:01, 22:12, 22:14, 22:16, 22:17
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 01:07, 02:12, 02:22, 03:03, 03:05, 03:07, 03:19, 03:21, 04:09, 05:09, 05:11, 06:05, 06:07, 06:09, 06:15, 07:01, 07:15, 08:03, 09:03, 10:01, 10:10, 11:10, 11:15, 12:10, 12:11, 13:01, 13:03, 13:05, 13:09, 13:15, 14:03, 14:08, 14:11, 15:03, 16:02, 16:03, 16:04, 16:08, 16:10, 16:12, 16:17,

16:20, 17:15, 17:16, 17:18, 18:01, 18:04, 18:15, 18:21, 18:23, 19:01, 19:17, 20:01, 20:13, 21:03, 21:05, 22:01, 22:06, 22:10, 22:18

* **Parallelism** is found in: 09:13, 21:03, 21:05, 21:11, 22:12

* **Personification** is found in: 09:05, 12:15, 14:08, 14:13, 16:08, 18:01, 18:04, 19:05, 20:05, 20:09, 20:11, 20:13, 21:09

* **Reflexive Pronouns** is found in: 19:01

* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 05:01, 13:03, 15:03, 17:06, 18:18

* **Simile** is found in: 01:09, 01:14, 02:18, 02:26, 03:03, 04:01, 04:06, 06:12, 08:08, 08:10, 09:01, 09:10, 10:01, 10:08, 12:15, 13:11, 14:14, 16:15, 18:07, 19:06, 19:11, 20:07, 21:01, 21:18, 21:21

* **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:07, 01:12, 03:09, 06:15, 09:13, 10:03, 10:08, 16:03, 16:04

* **Forms of You** is found in: 01:09, 16:04, 22:16

* **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 01:04, 02:18, 02:26, 03:05, 03:21, 14:01

* **Biblical Distance** is found in: 14:19, 21:16

* **Biblical Money** is found in: 06:05

* **Biblical Volume** is found in: 06:05

* **Biblical Weight** is found in: 16:20

* **Fractions** is found in: 08:08, 09:18, 12:03

* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:09, 02:06, 02:08, 02:12, 02:14, 02:18, 03:01, 09:10, 16:15

* **Numbers** is found in: 04:04, 04:09, 05:08, 05:11, 07:04, 09:16, 11:01, 11:08, 11:10, 11:16, 12:01, 13:05, 13:18, 14:01, 19:03, 20:01, 20:05, 21:11

* **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 06:03, 06:05, 06:07, 06:09, 06:12, 08:01, 08:08, 11:15

* **Symbolic Action** is found in: 03:09, 03:19, 04:09, 10:05, 11:10

* **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 04:01, 08:10, 09:03, 11:03, 14:14, 17:03, 17:12, 18:15, 21:11, 21:18, 21:21

* **Background Information** is found in: 17:03, 21:09

* **End of Story** is found in: 22:12

* **Introduction of New and Old Participants** is found in: 05:06

* **Quotations and Quote Margins** is found in: 01:07

* **Symbolic Language** is found in: 01:04, 01:19, 02:01, 02:03, 02:16, 02:26, 03:01, 03:07, 04:04, 05:06, 05:08, 11:03, 12:03, 12:07, 12:13, 12:15, 13:01, 13:03, 13:07, 13:11, 14:01, 14:08, 14:09, 14:14, 16:12, 16:17, 17:01, 17:12, 18:01, 19:07, 20:01, 20:05, 20:13, 21:07, 21:09, 21:26, 22:01

List of translationWords in Revelation

- * twelve tribes of Israel is found in: 21:11
- * accuse, accusation, accuser is found in: 12:10
- * adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress is found in: 02:22
- * adversary, enemy is found in: 11:03
- * Almighty is found in: 01:07, 04:07, 11:16, 15:03, 16:04, 19:06, 19:14, 21:21
- * altar is found in: 06:09, 08:03, 09:13, 11:01, 14:17, 16:04
- * marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished is found in: 13:03, 15:01, 15:03, 17:06
- * amen, truly is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 05:13, 07:11, 19:03, 22:20
- * angel, archangel is found in: 01:01, 01:19, 02:01, 02:08, 02:12, 02:18, 03:01, 03:05, 03:14, 05:01, 07:01, 07:11, 08:01, 08:03, 08:06, 08:08, 08:10, 08:12, 08:13, 09:01, 09:10, 09:13, 10:01, 10:05, 10:08, 10:10, 11:15, 12:07, 14:06, 14:08, 14:09, 14:14, 14:17, 14:19, 15:01, 15:05, 15:07, 16:01, 16:02, 16:03, 16:04, 16:08, 16:10, 16:12, 16:17, 17:01, 17:03, 17:06, 17:15, 18:01, 18:21, 19:09, 19:17, 20:01, 21:09, 21:11, 21:16, 22:01, 22:06, 22:08, 22:16
- * angry, anger is found in: 12:11, 14:09
- * anoint, anointed is found in: 03:17
- * apostle, apostleship is found in: 02:01, 18:18, 21:14
- * ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 11:19
- * Asher is found in: 07:04
- * Asia is found in: 01:04
- * authority is found in: 02:26, 11:03, 11:06, 12:10, 13:01, 13:03, 13:05, 13:07, 13:11, 14:17, 17:12, 18:01, 20:04
- * avenge, revenge, vengeance is found in: 06:09, 19:01
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 14:08, 16:17, 17:03, 18:01, 18:09, 18:21
- * Balaam is found in: 02:14
- * barley is found in: 06:05
- * bear is found in: 13:01
- * beast is found in: 11:06, 13:01, 13:03, 13:05, 13:07, 13:11, 13:13, 13:15, 13:18, 14:09, 14:11, 15:02, 16:02, 16:10, 16:12, 17:03, 17:06, 17:08, 17:11, 17:12, 17:16, 19:19, 20:04, 20:09
- * believer is found in: 05:08, 08:03, 11:18, 13:07, 16:04, 17:06, 18:18, 18:23, 20:09
- * beloved is found in: 20:09
- * Benjamin is found in: 07:07
- * blameless is found in: 14:03

- * blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous is found in: 13:01, 13:05, 16:08, 16:10, 17:03
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 01:01, 14:13, 16:15, 19:09, 20:05, 22:06, 22:14
- * blood is found in: 01:04, 05:09, 06:12, 07:13, 08:06, 08:08, 11:06, 12:11, 16:03, 16:04, 17:06, 18:23, 19:01, 19:11
- * bind, bond, bound is found in: 09:13
- * Book of Life is found in: 03:05, 13:07, 17:08, 20:11, 20:13, 21:26
- * bow, bow down is found in: 03:09, 04:09
- * bow and arrow is found in: 06:01
- * breastplate, breastpiece is found in: 09:07, 09:16
- * breathe, breath is found in: 11:10, 13:15
- * bride is found in: 18:23, 19:07, 21:01, 21:09, 22:17
- * bridegroom is found in: 18:23
- * bronze is found in: 01:14, 02:18, 09:20, 18:11
- * brother is found in: 01:09, 06:09, 12:10, 19:09, 22:08
- * burden is found in: 02:24
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 13:09, 14:11, 17:12, 19:11, 19:17
- * captive, captivity is found in: 13:09
- * chariot is found in: 09:07, 18:11
- * children, child is found in: 02:14, 12:05, 21:11
- * Christ, Messiah is found in: 11:15, 12:10, 20:04, 20:05
- * church, Church is found in: 01:04, 01:19, 02:01, 02:06, 02:08, 02:10, 02:12, 02:18, 02:22, 03:01, 03:05, 03:14, 03:21, 22:16
- * clothe, clothed is found in: 03:05, 11:03, 15:05
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 03:09, 12:15, 14:11
- * commander, command is found in: 19:17
- * commit, committed, commitment is found in: 17:01
- * condemn, condemnation is found in: 17:01
- * corrupt, corruption is found in: 19:01
- * courtyard, court is found in: 11:01
- * cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 04:07, 18:11
- * create, creation, Creator is found in: 03:14, 04:09, 05:13, 10:05, 13:07
- * creature is found in: 04:06, 04:07, 04:09, 05:06, 06:01, 06:03, 07:11, 08:08, 14:03, 15:07, 19:03

- * crown, to crown is found in: 02:10, 03:09, 04:04, 04:09, 06:01, 09:07, 12:01, 12:03, 13:01, 14:14, 19:11
- * crucify is found in: 11:08
- * curse, cursed is found in: 16:20, 22:03
- * darkness is found in: 08:12, 16:10
- * David is found in: 03:07, 05:03, 22:16
- * death, die, dead is found in: 01:04, 01:17, 02:08, 02:10, 02:22, 03:01, 06:07, 08:08, 09:05, 11:18, 12:11, 14:13, 16:03, 19:21, 20:05, 20:11, 20:13, 21:03, 21:07
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 12:07, 13:13, 18:23, 19:19, 20:01, 20:07, 20:09, 21:26
- * defile, be defiled is found in: 14:03
- * demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit is found in: 09:20, 16:12, 18:01
- * descendant, descended from is found in: 12:15, 22:16
- * desert, wilderness is found in: 12:05, 12:13, 17:03
- * desolate, desolation is found in: 17:16
- * detestable, detest is found in: 17:03
- * devour is found in: 11:03, 12:03, 17:16, 20:09
- * drunk, drunkard is found in: 17:01, 17:06
- * eagle is found in: 04:07, 08:13, 12:13
- * earth, earthly is found in: 01:04, 06:12, 08:06, 08:13, 09:01, 09:03, 11:03, 11:06, 12:11, 12:13, 12:15, 13:11, 16:01, 17:01, 19:19, 20:11, 21:01
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 11:08
- * elder is found in: 04:04, 04:09, 05:03, 07:11, 07:13, 11:16, 14:03, 19:03
- * chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 17:12
- * endure, endurance is found in: 01:09, 02:01, 02:03, 02:18, 03:09, 13:09, 14:11
- * Ephesus is found in: 01:09, 02:01
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 14:06
- * Euphrates River is found in: 09:13, 16:12
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 02:01, 18:04
- * face is found in: 01:14, 04:07, 06:15, 09:07, 22:03
- * faith is found in: 02:12, 02:18, 13:09, 14:11
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 01:04, 02:10, 02:12, 17:12, 19:11
- * faithless, faithlessness is found in: 21:07

- * false prophet is found in: 16:12, 19:19, 20:09
- * famine is found in: 06:07, 18:07
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 01:17, 02:10, 11:10, 11:18, 14:06, 15:03, 18:09, 19:05
- * fig is found in: 06:12
- * fire is found in: 01:14, 02:18, 03:17, 08:03, 08:06, 08:08, 09:16, 09:18, 11:03, 14:09, 14:17, 15:02, 16:08, 17:16, 19:11, 20:09
- * firstborn is found in: 01:04
- * firstfruits is found in: 14:03
- * flesh is found in: 17:16, 19:17, 19:21
- * flood is found in: 12:15
- * flute, pipe is found in: 18:21
- * forever is found in: 01:04, 01:17, 04:09, 05:13, 07:11, 10:05, 11:15, 14:11, 15:07, 19:03, 20:09, 22:03
- * sexual immorality is found in: 02:14, 02:20, 09:20, 17:01, 17:03, 18:01, 18:09, 19:01, 21:07, 22:14
- * foundation, founded is found in: 17:08, 21:14, 21:18
- * fountain, spring is found in: 08:10, 16:04
- * frankincense is found in: 18:11
- * free, freedom, liberty is found in: 13:15, 19:17, 22:17
- * fulfill is found in: 17:16
- * furnace is found in: 09:01
- * Gad is found in: 07:04
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 21:11, 21:21, 21:23, 22:14
- * Gentile is found in: 11:01
- * gift is found in: 11:10
- * glorify is found in: 15:03, 18:07
- * glory, glorious is found in: 01:04, 04:09, 05:11, 07:11, 11:13, 14:06, 15:07, 16:08, 18:01, 19:01, 19:07, 21:11, 21:23
- * God is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 02:06, 03:01, 03:12, 03:14, 04:04, 04:09, 05:06, 05:09, 07:01, 07:09, 07:11, 07:15, 08:01, 09:03, 09:13, 10:05, 11:01, 11:10, 11:16, 12:05, 12:10, 12:15, 14:03, 15:01, 15:02, 15:07, 16:01, 17:16, 18:04, 18:18, 19:01, 19:05, 19:06, 19:09, 19:14, 19:17, 21:01, 22:01, 22:18
- * God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:04, 02:26, 03:05, 03:21, 14:01
- * gold is found in: 01:12, 02:01, 03:17, 04:04, 08:03, 09:07, 09:13, 09:20, 14:14, 15:05, 15:07, 17:03, 18:11, 18:15, 21:14, 21:18, 21:21
- * good news, gospel is found in: 14:06

- * grace, gracious is found in: 01:04, 22:20
- * grape is found in: 14:17, 14:19
- * Greek, Grecian is found in: 09:10
- * hades, sheol is found in: 01:17, 06:07, 20:13
- * hail is found in: 08:06, 11:19, 16:20
- * hard, hardness, harden is found in: 02:01
- * harp is found in: 05:08, 14:01, 15:02, 18:21
- * harvest is found in: 14:14, 14:19
- * head is found in: 01:14
- * heal, cure is found in: 13:03, 13:11, 22:01
- * heart is found in: 17:16, 18:07
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 03:12, 04:01, 05:03, 05:13, 06:12, 08:01, 08:10, 08:13, 09:01, 10:01, 10:03, 10:08, 11:06, 11:10, 11:13, 11:15, 11:19, 12:01, 12:03, 12:07, 12:10, 12:11, 13:05, 13:13, 14:01, 14:13, 14:17, 15:01, 15:05, 16:10, 18:01, 18:04, 18:18, 19:01, 19:11, 19:14, 20:01, 20:09, 20:11, 21:01, 21:09
- * Hebrew is found in: 09:10, 16:15
- * hell, lake of fire is found in: 19:19, 20:09, 20:13, 21:07
- * holy, holiness is found in: 03:07, 04:07, 06:09, 11:01, 13:09, 14:09, 14:11, 15:03, 20:05, 22:10
- * holy city is found in: 21:01, 21:09, 22:18
- * Holy One is found in: 16:04
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:09, 02:06, 02:16, 02:26, 03:05, 03:21, 04:01, 14:13, 17:03, 19:09, 21:09, 22:06, 22:17
- * honey, honeycomb is found in: 10:08, 10:10
- * honor, to honor is found in: 04:09, 05:11, 07:11, 21:26
- * horn, horns is found in: 12:03, 13:01, 13:11, 17:06
- * horse is found in: 06:01, 06:03, 09:07, 09:16, 09:18, 14:19, 18:11, 19:11, 19:14, 19:17, 19:19, 19:21
- * hour is found in: 03:03, 03:09, 18:18
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 02:14, 02:20, 09:20, 21:07, 22:14
- * image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure is found in: 13:13, 13:15, 14:09, 14:11, 15:02, 16:02, 19:19, 20:04
- * incense is found in: 05:08, 08:03, 18:11
- * in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 01:09, 14:13
- * inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 21:07

- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 02:14, 07:04, 21:11
- * Issachar is found in: 07:07
- * Jerusalem is found in: 03:12, 21:01, 21:09, 21:11
- * Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 12:15, 14:11, 17:06, 19:09, 20:04, 22:16, 22:20
- * Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 02:08, 03:09
- * Jezebel is found in: 02:20
- * John (the apostle) is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:09, 22:08
- * Joseph (OT) is found in: 07:07
- * Judah is found in: 05:03, 07:04
- * judge, judgment is found in: 06:09, 11:18, 14:06, 16:04, 18:18, 19:01, 20:04, 20:11, 20:13
- * judge is found in: 18:07, 19:11
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 15:03, 19:01, 19:11
- * kind, kinds is found in: 11:06
- * king is found in: 01:04, 06:15, 09:10, 10:10, 15:03, 16:12, 17:01, 17:09, 17:11, 17:12, 17:18, 18:01, 18:09, 19:14, 19:17, 19:19, 21:23
- * kingdom is found in: 01:04, 01:09, 05:09, 11:15, 12:10, 16:10, 17:12
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:03, 12:11
- * labor, laborer is found in: 02:01, 14:13
- * labor pains, in labor is found in: 12:01
- * lamb, Lamb of God is found in: 05:06, 05:08, 05:13, 06:01, 06:03, 06:12, 07:09, 07:13, 07:15, 08:01, 12:11, 13:07, 13:11, 14:01, 14:03, 14:09, 15:03, 17:12, 19:07, 19:09, 21:09, 21:14, 21:21, 21:23, 21:26, 22:01, 22:03
- * lamp is found in: 04:04, 18:23, 21:23, 22:03
- * lampstand is found in: 01:12, 01:19, 02:01, 02:03, 11:03
- * leopard is found in: 13:01
- * Levite, Levi is found in: 07:07
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:17, 02:06, 02:08, 02:10, 03:01, 04:06, 04:07, 04:09, 05:06, 06:01, 07:01, 07:15, 08:08, 08:13, 10:05, 11:10, 12:11, 14:03, 15:07, 16:03, 19:19, 20:04, 21:05, 22:01, 22:14, 22:17
- * light is found in: 08:12, 18:23, 21:23
- * like, likeness is found in: 01:12, 01:14, 04:01, 04:07
- * lion is found in: 04:07, 05:03, 09:07, 09:16, 10:03, 13:01

- * Lord is found in: 01:07, 01:09, 04:07, 04:09, 11:03, 11:08, 11:15, 11:16, 15:03, 16:04, 17:12, 18:07, 19:06, 19:14, 21:21, 22:03, 22:06, 22:20
- * love is found in: 01:04, 02:03, 02:18, 03:09, 03:19, 12:11, 22:14
- * Manasseh is found in: 07:04
- * manna is found in: 02:16
- * Michael is found in: 12:07
- * mighty, might is found in: 11:18, 13:13, 13:15, 18:07, 18:14, 19:17, 20:11
- * mind is found in: 16:17, 17:09, 17:12
- * miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 13:13, 16:12
- * Moses is found in: 15:03
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 01:07, 18:07, 18:18
- * myrrh is found in: 18:11
- * mystery, hidden truth is found in: 10:05
- * name is found in: 02:03, 02:12, 02:16, 03:05, 03:12, 06:07, 08:10, 09:10, 11:18, 13:05, 13:15, 14:01, 14:11, 15:02, 15:03, 16:08, 17:03, 19:11, 19:14, 21:11, 22:03
- * Naphtali is found in: 07:04
- * nation is found in: 02:26, 05:09, 07:09, 10:10, 11:18, 12:05, 13:07, 14:06, 15:03, 16:17, 17:15, 18:01, 18:23, 19:14, 20:01, 20:07, 21:23, 21:26, 22:01
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 10:05
- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 01:01, 12:15, 14:11, 22:06, 22:08
- * oil is found in: 06:05, 18:11
- * olive is found in: 11:03
- * palm is found in: 07:09
- * patient, patience is found in: 01:09, 02:01, 02:03, 02:18, 03:09, 13:09, 14:11
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 01:04, 06:03
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 05:09, 07:09, 10:10, 11:08, 13:07, 14:06, 16:20, 17:15
- * people of God, my people is found in: 18:04, 19:07, 21:03
- * pillar, column is found in: 03:12, 10:01
- * pit is found in: 09:01, 09:10, 11:06, 17:08, 20:01
- * plague is found in: 09:18, 09:20, 11:06, 15:01, 15:05, 15:07, 16:08, 16:20, 18:04, 18:07, 21:09, 22:18
- * power, powers is found in: 01:04, 04:09, 05:11, 07:11, 09:03, 09:10, 09:18, 11:06, 11:16, 12:10, 15:07, 16:08, 17:12, 17:16, 18:01, 19:01, 19:05, 19:17, 20:05

- * praise is found in: 05:11, 07:11, 19:05
- * pray, prayer is found in: 05:08, 08:03
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 01:04, 05:09, 20:05
- * prince, princess is found in: 18:23
- * prison, prisoner, imprison is found in: 02:10, 20:07
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 05:01, 10:05, 14:06
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 01:01, 02:20, 10:05, 10:10, 11:03, 11:06, 11:10, 11:18, 16:04, 18:18, 18:23, 19:09, 22:06, 22:08, 22:10, 22:18
- * prostitute, harlot, whore is found in: 17:01, 17:03, 17:15, 17:16, 19:01
- * prostrate is found in: 19:03
- * proud, pride, prideful is found in: 13:05
- * punish, punishment is found in: 18:09
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 14:03, 15:05, 21:18, 21:21
- * queen is found in: 18:07
- * reap, reaper is found in: 14:14
- * receive is found in: 03:03, 17:12, 18:04, 19:19, 20:04
- * reed, reeds is found in: 11:01
- * reign is found in: 05:09, 11:15, 11:16, 19:06, 20:04, 20:05, 22:03
- * rejoice is found in: 11:10, 12:11, 18:18, 19:07
- * repent, repentance is found in: 02:03, 02:16, 02:20, 02:22, 03:03, 03:19, 09:20, 16:08, 16:10
- * rest is found in: 14:11, 14:13
- * resurrection is found in: 20:05
- * Reuben is found in: 07:04
- * reveal, revelation is found in: 01:01, 15:03
- * reward is found in: 11:18, 22:12
- * righteous, righteousness is found in: 15:03, 16:04, 19:07, 22:10
- * right hand is found in: 01:14, 02:01, 05:01
- * robe is found in: 01:12, 06:09, 07:09, 19:11, 19:14, 22:14
- * rod is found in: 02:26, 11:01, 12:05, 19:14, 21:14, 21:16
- * ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 01:04, 03:14, 06:09, 12:05, 17:18
- * sackcloth is found in: 06:12, 11:03
- * sacrifice, offering is found in: 02:14, 02:20

- * **salvation** is found in: 07:09, 12:10, 19:01
- * **Satan, devil, evil one** is found in: 02:08, 02:10, 02:12, 02:24, 03:09, 12:07, 12:11, 20:01, 20:07, 20:09
- * **scroll** is found in: 05:01, 05:03, 06:12, 10:01, 10:08, 10:10
- * **seal, to seal** is found in: 05:01, 05:03, 06:01, 06:03, 06:12, 07:01, 08:01, 09:03, 20:01, 22:10
- * **send, send out, sent** is found in: 01:09, 11:10, 22:06
- * **serpent, snake, viper** is found in: 09:18, 12:07, 12:13, 12:15, 20:01
- * **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 01:01, 02:20, 06:09, 06:15, 07:01, 10:05, 11:18, 13:15, 15:03, 18:11, 19:01, 19:05, 19:09, 19:17, 22:03, 22:06, 22:08
- * **serve, service** is found in: 22:03
- * **shame, shameful, ashamed** is found in: 03:17, 16:15, 21:26
- * **sheep, ram, ewe** is found in: 18:11
- * **shepherd, to shepherd** is found in: 07:15
- * **sign, proof, reminder** is found in: 12:01, 12:03, 15:01, 16:12, 19:19
- * **silver** is found in: 09:20, 18:11
- * **Simeon** is found in: 07:07
- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 01:04, 18:04
- * **slander, slanderer** is found in: 02:08
- * **slaughter** is found in: 13:07
- * **snow** is found in: 01:14
- * **Sodom** is found in: 11:08
- * **son, son of** is found in: 12:05, 21:07
- * **Son of God, the Son, Son** is found in: 02:18
- * **Son of Man, son of man** is found in: 01:12, 14:14
- * **sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft** is found in: 09:20, 18:23, 21:07, 22:14
- * **soul** is found in: 06:09, 18:11, 20:04
- * **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 01:04, 05:06
- * **splendor** is found in: 21:23, 21:26
- * **strength, strengthen** is found in: 03:07
- * **stumbling block, stone of stumbling** is found in: 02:14
- * **suffer, suffering** is found in: 01:09, 02:08, 02:10, 02:22
- * **sulfur** is found in: 09:16, 09:18, 14:09, 20:09, 21:07
- * **sword** is found in: 01:14, 02:12, 02:16, 06:03, 13:09, 13:13, 19:14, 19:21

- * **synagogue** is found in: 02:08, 03:09
- * **temple** is found in: 03:12, 07:15, 11:01, 11:19, 14:14, 14:17, 15:05, 15:07, 16:01, 16:17, 21:21
- * **tent** is found in: 07:15
- * **tent of meeting** is found in: 15:05
- * **terror, terrify** is found in: 11:13
- * **test** is found in: 02:01, 02:10, 03:09
- * **testimony, testify** is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 06:09, 11:06, 12:11, 12:15, 19:09, 20:04, 22:16, 22:18, 22:20
- * **thief, thieves, robber** is found in: 03:03
- * **throne** is found in: 01:04, 02:12, 03:21, 04:01, 04:04, 04:09, 05:01, 07:09, 07:11, 07:15, 08:03, 11:16, 12:05, 13:01, 14:03, 16:10, 16:17, 19:03, 19:05, 20:04, 20:11, 21:03, 22:01, 22:03
- * **time** is found in: 14:14
- * **tomb, grave, burial place** is found in: 11:08
- * **torment** is found in: 11:10, 14:09, 14:11, 18:09
- * **tribe** is found in: 01:07, 05:03, 05:09, 07:04, 07:09, 11:08, 13:07, 14:06
- * **tribulation** is found in: 07:13
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 03:07, 03:14, 06:09, 15:03, 16:04, 19:01, 19:09, 19:11, 21:05, 22:06
- * **trumpet** is found in: 01:09, 04:01, 08:01, 08:06, 08:08, 08:10, 08:12, 08:13, 09:01, 09:13, 11:15, 18:21
- * **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 21:05
- * **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 11:06
- * **unclean** is found in: 18:01, 21:26
- * **unrighteous, unrighteousness** is found in: 22:10
- * **vine** is found in: 14:17
- * **vision** is found in: 09:16
- * **voice** is found in: 01:09, 01:12, 01:14, 04:01, 05:01, 06:01, 07:01, 08:13, 09:13, 10:03, 10:08, 11:10, 12:10, 14:01, 14:09, 14:13, 14:14, 14:17, 16:01, 16:17, 18:01, 18:04, 19:01, 19:05, 19:06, 19:17, 21:03
- * **walk** is found in: 03:03, 21:23
- * **waste, wasteland** is found in: 18:15
- * **watch, watchman** is found in: 16:15
- * **water, waters** is found in: 01:14, 08:10, 11:06, 12:15, 14:01, 16:04, 17:01, 17:15, 19:06, 22:17
- * **wheat** is found in: 06:05, 18:11
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 06:05, 14:08, 14:09, 16:17, 17:01, 18:01, 18:11

- * winepress is found in: 14:19, 19:14
- * wise, wisdom is found in: 05:11, 07:11, 13:18, 17:09
- * witness, eyewitness is found in: 01:04, 02:12, 03:14, 11:03, 11:06
- * woe is found in: 08:13, 09:10, 11:13, 12:11, 18:09, 18:15, 18:18
- * word is found in: 02:01, 02:08, 12:11, 21:05, 22:06, 22:08, 22:10, 22:18
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 06:09, 17:16, 19:09, 19:11, 20:04
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 03:01, 09:20, 14:13, 15:03, 19:07
- * world, worldly is found in: 11:15, 12:07, 16:12
- * worship is found in: 05:13, 07:11, 07:15, 09:20, 11:01, 11:16, 13:03, 13:07, 13:11, 13:15, 14:06, 14:09, 14:11, 15:03, 16:02, 19:03, 19:09, 19:19, 20:04, 22:08
- * worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 03:03, 04:09, 05:01, 05:03
- * wrath, fury is found in: 06:15, 11:18, 14:09, 14:19, 15:01, 15:07, 16:01, 16:17, 19:14
- * written is found in: 01:01, 19:11, 20:13
- * Zebulun is found in: 07:07
- * Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 14:01

Revelation 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter explains how the book is a recording of the vision John received on the island of Patmos. This book is a recording of the visual image John saw.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent all the lines of 1:7, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven churches

This letter was specifically addressed to seven actual churches located in the modern country of Turkey.

White

White is a color that often symbolizes holiness or righteousness in scripture. (See: [holy, holiness](#) and [righteous, righteousness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Him who is, and who was, and who is to come”

The phrase explains that God has always existed, exists now and will always exist. Not all languages have a way to easily translate the past, present and future aspects of a verb. It is possible this is a play on the name of God, Yahweh, which means “I am.”

His blood

This is a reference to Jesus’s death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“He is coming with the clouds”

Many scholars believe Jesus will come back in two stages. Jesus will first return will be subtle, like a “thief in the night.” Then, Jesus will come in an undeniable way where everyone will see him. It is this latter coming that the book of Revelation is about.

Jesus

The image of the man in heaven is probably Jesus. Overall, the image is a description of Jesus in all of his glory. (See: [glory, glorious](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)).

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” It is possible this is a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

Links:

- [Revelation 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

Revelation 1:1-3

UDB:

¹ This book has the things that Jesus Christ showed to me, John. God showed these things to Jesus in order that he might pass them on to his servants. These things will happen soon. Jesus communicated these things by sending his angel to me, his servant John. ² As a witness I, John, reported everything I saw and heard about the word of God, and the true accounts that were given about Jesus Christ. ³ God will do good to anyone who reads these words to any who hear them when they are being read aloud. He will do good to those who listen carefully to them and obey them, for the time when these things happen is approaching quickly.

ULB:

1 ¹ This is the revelation of Jesus Christ that God gave him to show his servants what must soon take place. He made it known by sending his angel to his servant John. ² John testified about the word of God and about the testimony given about Jesus Christ, all the things that he saw. ³ Blessed are the one who reads aloud, and who listen to the words of this prophecy, and who obey what is written in it, because the time is near.

translationWords:

- reveal, revelation
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God
- servant, slave, slavery
- angel, archangel
- John (the apostle)
- testimony, testify
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- bless, blessed, blessing
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- obey, obedient, obedience
- written

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is an introduction to the book of Revelation. It explains that it is a revelation from Jesus Christ and it gives a blessing to those who read it.
- **his servants** - This refers to people who believe in Christ.
- **what must soon take place** - “the events that must happen soon”

- **made it known** - “communicated it”
- **to his servant John** - John wrote this book and was referring to himself here. AT: “to me, John, his servant” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **the word of God** - Here it refers to the messages that God gave John.
- **the one who reads aloud** - This does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone who reads it aloud. AT: “anyone who reads aloud” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **obey what is written in it** - “believe what is written in it and obey the commands in it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the time is near** - “the things that must happen will soon happen”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:4-6

UDB:

⁴ I, John, am writing this letter to the seven groups of believers in the province of Asia. May God be kind to you and give you peace, for he is the one who has always existed, who exists now, and who will always exist in the future. May the seven spirits who are sitting in front of his throne do these things for you, too. ⁵ May Jesus Christ also—who has faithfully told us the truth about God and—be kind to you and give you peace. For he is the first one whom God raised from the dead, and he is the one who rules the kings of the earth. He is the one who loves us and who has freed us from the guilt of our sins by his blood when he died on the cross. ⁶ He is the one who has begun to rule over his kingdom; he has set us apart to be priests who worship God his Father as he commanded. It is Jesus Christ whom we must honor and praise forever. This is the truth.

ULB:

⁴ John, to the seven churches in Asia: May grace be to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, and from the seven spirits who are before his throne, ⁵ and from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead ones, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To the one who loves us and has released us from our sins by his blood— ⁶ he has made us a kingdom, priests for his God and Father—to him be the glory and the power forever and ever. Amen.

translationWords:

- John (the apostle)
- church, Church
- Asia
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful
- spirit, spiritual
- throne
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- faithful, faithfulness
- witness, eyewitness
- firstborn
- death, die, dead
- ruler, rulers, rule
- king
- earth, earthly
- love
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blood

- kingdom
- priest, priesthood
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- glory, glorious
- power, powers
- forever
- amen, truly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of John's letter. Here he names himself as the writer and greets the people he is writing to.
- **May grace be to you and peace from the one who is ... and from the seven spirits ... and from Jesus Christ** - This is a wish or blessing. John speaks as if these were things that God could give, although they are really ways in which he hopes God will act for his people. AT: "May he who is ... and the seven spirits ... and Jesus Christ treat you kindly and enable you to live peacefully and securely" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **from the one who is** - "from God, who is"
- **who is to come** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **seven spirits** - The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the firstborn from the dead ones** - "the first person to be raised from death"
- **has released us** - "has set us free"
- **has made us a kingdom, priests** - "has set us apart and begun to rule over us and he has made us priests"
- **his God and Father** - This is one person. AT: "God, his Father"
- **Father** - This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **to him be the glory and the power** - This is a wish or prayer. Possible meanings are 1) "May people honor his glory and power" or 2) "May he have glory and power." John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the power** - This probably refers to his authority as king.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Look! Christ is coming in the clouds. Everyone will see him, including those who killed him by nailing him to a cross. Every tribe, every kind of person on earth, will be in sorrow and grief when they see him coming. That is the truth! ⁸ The Lord God declares, “I am the one who began all things, the Alpha, and I am the one who will cause all things to end, the Omega. I am the one who exists, who has always existed, and who will always exist. I am the One who rules over everything and everyone.”

ULB:

⁷ Look, he is coming with the clouds;

every eye will see him,

including those who pierced him.

And all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of him.

Yes, Amen.

⁸ “I am the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.”^[1] Some versions read, “*I am the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end,*” says the Lord God.

translationWords:

- **tribe**
- **mourn, mourning**
- **amen, truly**
- **Lord**
- **God**
- **Almighty**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verse 7, John is quoting from Daniel and Zechariah.
- **every eye** - Since people see with the eyes, the word “eye” is used to refer to people. AT: “every person” or “everyone” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **including those who pierced him** - “and those who pierced him will also see him”
- **pierced him** - Jesus’ hands and feet were pierced when he was nailed to the cross. Here it refers to people killing him. AT: “killed him” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **pierced** - made a hole in

- **the alpha and the omega** - These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) “the one who began all things and who ends all things” or 2) “the one who has always lived and who always will live”. If unclear to readers you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. AT: “the A and the Z” or “the first and the last” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))
- **who is to come** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **says the Lord God** - Some languages would put “The Lord God says” at the beginning or the end of the whole sentence. (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:9-11

UDB:

⁹ I, John, your fellow believer, am suffering as you are because Jesus rules over us. We share together the call to suffer for our faith. We are part of his reign and rule over all things, and we are patiently enduring every trial and test the comes. I was imprisoned and sent to the Island of Patmos because I kept telling people about God's message and the truth about Jesus. ¹⁰ On one of the days we worship the Lord with other believers, God's Spirit took control of me. Then I heard behind me someone speaking. He voice was like a trumpet that was being played. ¹¹ He said to me, "Write on a scroll what you see, and send it to seven groups of believers. Send it to the believers in the cities of Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea."

ULB:

⁹ I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony about Jesus. ¹⁰ I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day. I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet. ¹¹ It said, "Write what you see in a book, and send it to the seven churches—to Ephesus, to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea."

translationWords:

- John (the apostle)
- brother
- suffer, suffering
- kingdom
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- testimony, testify
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- Lord
- voice
- trumpet
- send, send out, sent
- Ephesus

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John explains how his vision began and the instructions the Spirit gave him.

- **your ... you** - These refer to the believers in the seven churches. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus** - “who shares with you in God’s kingdom. I also suffer and patiently endure trials along with you because we belong to Jesus”
- **because of the word of God** - “because I told others about the word of God”
- **in the Spirit** - John speaks of being influenced by God’s Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. AT: “influenced by the Spirit” or “the Spirit influenced me” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the Lord’s day** - the day of worship for believers in Christ
- **loud voice like a trumpet** - The voice was so loud it sounded like a trumpet. (See: [Simile](#))
- **trumpet** - This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.
- **to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea** - These are names of cities in Asia, which is modern Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:12-13

UDB:

¹² When I heard these words, I turned to see who was speaking. Then I saw seven golden lampstands. ¹³ In the middle of the lampstands there was someone who looked like a human being. He wore a robe that reached to his feet and a golden sash around his chest.

ULB:

¹² I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. ¹³ In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden sash around his chest.

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [gold](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [robe](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John begins to explain what he saw in his vision.
- **whose voice** - This refers to the person speaking. AT: “who” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **son of man** - This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a golden sash** - a piece of cloth worn around the chest. It may have had golden threads in it.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The hair on his head was as white as wool or fresh fallen snow. His eyes were like a brilliant flame. ¹⁵ His feet looked like gleaming bronze. When he spoke, his voice sounded had the volume and depth of a great river of rushing water. ¹⁶ He was holding seven stars in his right hand. A sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face shone as bright as the sun at midday.

ULB:

¹⁴ His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. ¹⁵ His feet were like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. ¹⁶ He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest.

translationWords:

- head
- snow
- like, likeness
- fire
- bronze
- voice
- water, waters
- right hand
- sword
- face

translationNotes:

- **His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow** - Wool and snow are examples of things that are very white. The repetition of “as white as” emphasizes that they were very white. W(See: [Doublet](#))
- **wool** - This is the hair of a sheep or goat. It was known to be very white.
- **his eyes were like a flame of fire** - His eyes are describes as being full of light like a flame of fire. AT: “his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire” (See: [Simile](#))
- **His feet were like polished bronze** - Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. AT: “His feet were very shiny like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))

- **like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace** - The bronze would be refined first and then polished. AT: “like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and polished” (See: [Order of Events](#))
- **furnace** - a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal in it, and the hot fire would burn away any impurities that were in the metal.
- **the sound of many rushing waters** - This is very loud like the sound of a large, fast flowing, river, a large waterfall, or of loud waves in the sea.
- **a sword ... was coming out of his mouth** - The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.
- **a sword with two sharp edges** - This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ When I saw him, I fell down at his feet as though I were dead. But he put his right hand on me and said to me, "Do not be afraid! I am the First One who began all things and the Last One who causes all things to end. ¹⁸ I am alive, even though I died once, and indeed, I am alive forever! I have power over death and I control the place of the dead.

ULB:

¹⁷ When I saw him, I fell at his feet like a dead man. He placed his right hand on me and said, "Do not be afraid. I am the first and the last, ¹⁸ and the one who lives. I was dead, but look, I live forever! And I have the keys of death and of Hades.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [forever](#)
- [hades, sheol](#)

translationNotes:

- **fell at his feet** - John lay down facing the ground. He was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect.
- **He placed his right hand on me** - "He touched me with his right hand"
- **I am the first and the last** - This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. (See: [Merism](#))
- **I have the keys of death and of Hades** - Having the power over something is spoken of as having the keys to it. The implied information is that he can give life to those who have died and let them out of Hades. AT: "I have the power over death and over Hades" or "I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 1:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ So write down what you have seen. And write down what is happening now. And write down what will happen in the future. ²⁰ The meaning of the seven stars that you saw in my right hand and of the seven golden lampstands is this: The seven stars represent the angels who watch over the seven groups of believers in Asia, and the seven lampstands represent the seven groups that are there.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Therefore write down what you have seen, what is now, and what will take place after this. ²⁰ As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches.”

translationWords:

- [lampstand](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [church, Church](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The Son of Man continues to speak.
- **stars** - These stars are symbols. They appear to represent the seven angels of the seven churches. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **lampstands** - The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in [1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the angels of the seven churches** - Possible meanings are 1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches or 2) human messengers to the seven churches.
- **seven churches** - This refers to seven churches that actually existed in Asia Minor at that time. See how you translated this in [1:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 01 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 together form a single unit. This is section usually referred to as the “seven letters to the seven churches.” The translator may wish to set these letters apart from each other to clearly distinguish them.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:27, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Poverty and wealth

This chapter has a play on the two possible meanings of being poor and rich. The Ephesians were poor financially because they did not have a lot of money. They were not poor spiritually because of the great “riches” they had in Christ. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

“The devil is about to”

The book of Revelation is about the things that Satan is going to do on earth. Despite this, it is ultimately about what God will do in the end to defeat Satan.

Balaam, Balak and Jezebel

These teachings of Balaam are difficult to fully understand if the books of Kings have not yet been translated. This is probably a reference to leading the people of Israel into immorality and to worship of false gods. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Some scholars take chapter 2 and 3 as a metaphor. They understand these churches to refer to types of churches or historical periods of the church. It is best to translate this as instructions to ancient churches in each of these cities. (See: [Metaphor](#))

“If you have an ear, listen to what the Spirit says to the churches.”

This is a phrase which acts as a call to repentance for those in the church. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” It is possible this is a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

“These are the words of the one”

This phrase, used to introduce these letter is probably a reference to Jesus. Each letter then describes an aspect of Jesus which is significant for the rest of the letter.

Links:

- [Revelation 02:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 2:1-2

UDB:

¹ Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Ephesus: The one who holds the seven stars in his right hand, and the one who walks among the seven golden lampstands says this; ² 'I know all you have done. I know that you work hard for me. I know you are patient when you go through hard times. I also know that you cannot tolerate people who are evil, and that you question people about their faith, and you know those who claim to be apostles, but they are not.

ULB:

²¹ "To the angel of the church in Ephesus write:

"These are the words of the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand and who walks among the seven golden lampstands, ² "I know what you have done and your hard labor and your patient endurance. I know that you cannot tolerate the evil people. I know that you have tested those who say they are apostles, but are not, and that you have found them to be false.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- Ephesus
- word
- right hand
- gold
- lampstand
- hard, hardness, harden
- labor, laborer
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- test
- apostle, apostleship

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Ephesus.
- **the angel** - Possible meanings are 1) a heavenly angel who protects the church or 2) a human messenger to the churches. See how you translated "angel" in [1:20](#)

- **stars** - These stars are symbols. They represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [1:16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **lampstands** - The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in [1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **I know ... your hard labor and your patient endurance** - “Labor” and “endurance” are abstract nouns and can be translated with verbs “work” and “endure.” AT: “I know ... that you work very hard and that you endure patiently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **but are not** - “but are not apostles”
- **you have found them to be false** - “you have recognized that those people are false apostles”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:3-5

UDB:

³ I know also that you endure patiently when you suffer for believing in me and that you continue to serve me steadfastly. Even when people caused you to suffer because you followed me. You have continued to serve and hold to my words even when it was difficult. You did not give up or stop, even though it has been difficult for you. ⁴ Nevertheless, you have done something wrong: You no longer love each other and me as you did when you first came to trust. You do not have the same love for me now that you had at first. ⁵ So, I tell you to remember how you used to love me. Love me again like you did at the first. If you do not, I will come to you and remove your lamp so you will no longer be my people together.

ULB:

³ I know you have patient endurance, and you have suffered much because of my name, and that you have not grown weary. ⁴ But I have against you the fact that you have left behind your first love. ⁵ Remember therefore from where you have fallen. Repent and do the things you did at first. Unless you repent, I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place.

translationWords:

- know, knowledge, make known
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance
- name
- love
- repent, repentance
- lampstand

translationNotes:

- **because of my name** - “because you believe in my name” or “because you believe in me”
- **you have not grown weary** - Being discouraged is spoken of as being tired. AT: “you have not become discouraged” or “you have not quit” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I have against you** - “I disapprove of you because of this” or “I am angry with you because of this”
- **you have left behind your first love** - To stop doing something is spoken of as leaving it behind. Love is spoken of as if it is an object that can be left behind. AT “you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **from where you have fallen** - No longer loving as much as they used to is spoken of as falling. AT: “how much you have changed” or “how much you used to love me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Unless you repent** - “If you do not repent”
- **remove your lampstand** - The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated “lampstand” in [1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But you do one thing very well: Those Nicolaitans, the people who say you can worship idols and act immorally—you hate what they do, just as I hate it. ⁷ Everyone who wants to understand my message must listen carefully to the message that God’s Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together. The message is this: I will allow those who are victorious to eat fruit from the tree that gives eternal life, the tree that is in God’s garden.”

ULB:

⁶ But you have this: You hate what the Nicolaitans have done, which I also hate. ⁷ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers I will give the right to eat from the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God.“”

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nicolaitans** - people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Let the one who has an ear listen** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “anyone who resists evil” or “those who do not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **the paradise of God** - “God’s garden.” This is a symbol for heaven.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:8-9

UDB:

⁸ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Smyrna: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the first, the one who began all things and I am the last, who causes all things to end. I am the one who died and became alive again. ⁹ I know about how you have suffered. I know about how you are poor and lack many things that you need (but you are really rich in the things that are eternal and that can never be taken from you). You know what it is like to have people curse you and say terrible things about you because you follow Christ. Those Jews (who are not real Jews) who curse you and say terrible things about you, they are members of the gathering of Satan, and not the gathering of God's people.

ULB:

⁸ "To the angel of the church in Smyrna write:

'These are the words of the one who is the first and the last, the one who was dead and who became alive again: ⁹ "I know your sufferings and your poverty, but you are rich. I know the slander of those who say they are Jews, but they are not. They are a synagogue of Satan.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- word
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- suffer, suffering
- slander, slanderer
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- synagogue
- Satan, devil, evil one

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Smyrna.
- **Smyrna** - This is the name of a city in Asia, which is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the first and the last** - This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [1:17](#). (See: [Merism](#))

- **I know your sufferings and your poverty** - “Sufferings” and “poverty” can be translated as verbs. AT: “I know how you have suffered and how poor you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **I know the slander of those who say they are Jews** - “Slander” can be translated as a verb. AT: “I know how those who say they are Jews have slandered you” or “I know how those who say they are Jews have said terrible things about you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **but they are not** - “but they are not real Jews”
- **a synagogue of Satan** - People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Do not be afraid of any of the things that you are about to suffer. The truth is that the devil is about to put some of you in prison, to put you in a difficult place where you are being tested to see what kind of faith you have. For a short period of time you will suffer. Continue to trust in me, even if they kill you because you trust in me. and I will put a wreath on your head that will be a sign that you have eternal life and that you have overcome. ¹¹ Listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit speaks to the groups of believers assembled together. All who conquer will never die a second time.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Look! The devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you will be tested, and you will suffer for ten days. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life. ¹¹ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. The one who conquers will not be hurt by the second death.“”

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- suffer, suffering
- Satan, devil, evil one
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- test
- faithful, faithfulness
- death, die, dead
- crown, to crown
- life, live, living, alive
- church, Church

translationNotes:

- **The devil is about to throw some of you into prison** - “The devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison”
- **Be faithful until death** - “Be faithful to me even if they kill you.” The use of the word “until” does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death.
- **the crown** - “the winner’s crown.” This was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete.
- **the crown of life** - Possible meanings are 1) “a crown that shows that I have given you eternal life” or 2) “true life as a prize like a winner’s crown” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **Let the one who has an ear** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Those who do not agree to do evil.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **will not be hurt by the second death** - “will not experience the second death” or “will not die a second time”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:12-13

UDB:

¹² "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Pergamum: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who has the sword with two sharp edges. ¹³ I know that you live where Satan's power is strong and his influence is everywhere. I know that you firmly believe, and you hold on to what I love and what is important to me. Even when they killed my faithful servant Antipas, who had kept telling people who I am and what I did for them.

ULB:

¹² "To the angel of the church in Pergamum write:

'These are the words of the one who has the sword with two sharp edges: ¹³ "I know where you live, there where Satan's throne is. Yet you hold on tightly to my name. I know that you did not deny your faith in me, even in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, there where Satan lives.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- sword
- Satan, devil, evil one
- throne
- name
- faith
- witness, eyewitness
- faithful, faithfulness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Pergamum.
- **Pergamum** - This is the name of a city in Asia, which is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the sword with two sharp edges** - This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions. See how you translated this in [1:16](#)
- **Satan's throne** - Possible meanings are 1) Satan's power and evil influence on people, or 2) the place where Satan rules. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you hold on tightly to my name** - Firmly believing is spoken of as holding on tightly. AT: "you firmly believe in me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **you did not deny your faith in me** - “Faith” can be translated with the verb “believe.” AT “you did not stop believing in me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Antipas** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ But, even so, I see some matters that are hurting your testimony and weakening your obedience. You permit some of your members to teach things like Balaam taught long ago. He taught Balak to eat food that had been offered to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people. ¹⁵ In that way, you are also permitting some of your members to practice what the Nicolaitans teach, that sexual immorality is permitted, which, of course, it is not permitted.

ULB:

¹⁴ But I have a few things against you: You have there some who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the children of Israel, so they would eat food sacrificed to idols and be sexually immoral. ¹⁵ In the same way, you even have some who hold tightly to the teaching of the Nicolaitans.

translationWords:

- Balaam
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- children, child
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sacrifice, offering
- idol, idolatrous
- sexual immorality

translationNotes:

- **But I have a few things against you** - "I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did." See how you translated a similar phrase in 2:4.
- **who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam** - Possible meanings are 1)"who teach what Balaam taught" or 2)"who do what Balaam taught." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Balak** - This is the name of a king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the children of Israel** - Something that leads people to sin is spoken of as a stone in the road that people stumble on. AT: "who showed Balak how to cause the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be sexually immoral** - "sin sexually" or "commit sexual sin"
- **Nicolaitans** - This was the name for a group of people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus. See how you translated this in 2:6 (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Stop doing this and change your direction, or I will come to you suddenly and I will make war against them with the sword in my mouth, the word of God. ¹⁷ Listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit speaks to the groups of believers. To him who conquers, I will give the hidden manna, that will feed and strengthen you. I will also give him a white stone, on which I will engrave a new name for him, a name I give him will be a name that only he and I will know."

ULB:

¹⁶ Repent, therefore! If you do not, I will quickly come to you, and I will wage war against them with the sword in my mouth. ¹⁷ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers, I will give some of the hidden manna, and I will give a white stone with a new name written on the stone, a name which no one knows but the one who receives it."

translationWords:

- **repent, repentance**
- **sword**
- **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord**
- **manna**
- **name**

translationNotes:

- **Repent, therefore** - "So repent"
- **If you do not, I** - "If you do not repent, I" (See: **Ellipsis**)
- **wage war against them** - "fight against them"
- **with the sword in my mouth** - This refers to the sword in **1:16**. Although symbols in apocalyptic language are normally not to be translated, translators may choose whether or not to explain this symbol as a symbol of God's word, as the UDB does. This symbol indicates that Christ will defeat his enemies by giving a simple command. (See: **Symbolic Language**)
- **Let the one who has an ear listen** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing, listen." See how you translated this in **2:7**. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **To the one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: "anyone who resists evil" or "those who do not agree to do evil." See how you translated this in **2:7**. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled together in the city of Thyatira: 'I, the Son of God, whose eyes shine like a flame of fire and whose feet shine like gleaming bronze, am saying these things to you. ¹⁹ I know all the good things that you do. I know that you love me and each other, and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties. I know that you are doing these things more now than you did in the past.

ULB:

¹⁸ "To the angel of the church in Thyatira write:

'These are the words of the Son of God, who has eyes like a flame of fire and feet like polished bronze: ¹⁹ "I know what you have done: Your love and faith and service and your patient endurance. I know that what you have done recently is more than you did at first.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- fire
- bronze
- love
- faith
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Thyatira.
- **Thyatira** - This is the name of a city in Asia, which is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Son of God** - This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **eyes like a flame of fire** - His eyes are describes as being full of light like a flame of fire. AT: "his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire." See how you translated this in [1:14](#) (See: [Simile](#))
- **feet like polished bronze** - Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. AT: "his feet were very shiny like polished bronze." See how you translated this in [1:15](#) (See: [Simile](#))

- **Your love and faith and service and your patient endurance** - These abstract nouns can be translated with verbs. AT: “how you love, trust, serve, and endure patiently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Your love and faith and service and your patient endurance** - The implied objects of these verbs can be stated clearly. AT: “how you love me and others, trust me, serve others, and endure troubles patiently” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Nevertheless, you have done something wrong: You tolerate that woman among your people who is like that wicked Queen Jezebel who lived long ago. She says that she is a prophetess. However, by what she teaches, she is deceiving my servants. She is urging them to commit sexual immorality and to eat food that they have offered to idols. ²¹ Although I gave her time to turn away from her sexual immorality and pagan practices, she did not want to stop.

ULB:

²⁰ But I have this against you: You tolerate the woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess. By her teaching she deceives my servants to commit sexual immorality and to eat food sacrificed to idols. ²¹ I gave her time to repent, but she is not willing to repent of her immorality.

translationWords:

- [Jezebel](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)

translationNotes:

- **But I have this against you** - “But I disapprove of some of the things you have done” or “But I am angry with you because of something you did.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [2:4](#).
- **the woman Jezebel** - Jesus spoke of a certain woman in their church as if she were Queen Jezebel, because she did the same kinds of sinful things that Queen Jezebel had done long before that time. AT: “the woman who is just like Jezebel” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I gave her time to repent** - “I gave her opportunity to repent” or “I waited for her to repent”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:22-23

UDB:

²² As a result, I will cause her to become very ill. I will also cause those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly, if they do not stop doing what she does. ²³ Some have become like her children by accepting what she teaches, and I will certainly kill them. Then all the groups of believers will learn that I am the one who finds out what everyone thinks and desires. I will reward each of you according to what you have done.

ULB:

²² Look! I will throw her onto a sickbed, and those who commit adultery with her into great suffering, unless they repent of her deeds. ²³ I will strike her children dead, and all the churches will know that I am the one who searches thoughts and hearts. I will give to each one of you according to your deeds.

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- suffer, suffering
- repent, repentance
- death, die, dead
- church, Church

translationNotes:

- **I will throw her onto a sickbed** - Her having to lie in bed would be the result of Jesus making her very sick. AT: “I will make her lie sick in bed” or “I will make her very sick” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and those who commit adultery with her into great suffering** - Jesus speaks of causing people to suffer as throwing them into suffering. AT: “and I will make those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **commit adultery** - “practice adultery”
- **unless they repent of her deeds** - “if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will strike her children dead** - “I will kill her children”
- **her children** - Jesus spoke of her followers as if they were her children. AT: ‘her followers’ or “the people who do what she teaches” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **thoughts and hearts** - The term “heart” is often used to refer to feelings and desires. These two ideas can be translated as verbs. AT: “what people think and want” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **I will give to each one of you** - This is an expression about punishment and reward. AT: “I will punish or reward each one of you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ But I have something good to say about the rest of you believers in the city of Thyatira. It is good that you do not accept these wrong things. It is good that you reject what those teachers call their ‘secret practices’ that Satan taught them. I will not burden you with any other commands. ²⁵ Just keep believing firmly in me and obey me until I come.

ULB:

²⁴ But to the rest of you in Thyatira, to everyone who does not hold this teaching, and does not know what some call the deep things of Satan—to you I say, ‘I do not put any other burden on you.’ ²⁵ In any case, you must hold on tightly until I come.

translationWords:

- Satan, devil, evil one
- burden

translationNotes:

- **everyone who does not hold this teaching** - Believing a teaching is spoken of as holding the teaching. AT: “everyone who does not believe this teaching” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **this teaching** - The noun “teaching” can be translated as a verb. AT: “what she teaches” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the deep things of Satan** - “the deep things that Satan teaches”
- **deep things** - Secret things are spoken of as if they were deep. AT: “secret things” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what some call the deep things of Satan** - Possible meanings are 1) those who called them the deep things understood that they were from Satan or 2) some people called them the deep things, but Jesus was saying that those things were really from Satan. AT: “the things of Satan, what some call the deep things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 2:26-29

UDB:

²⁶ As for those who conquer Satan and who keep on doing what I command until they die, I will give them my authority over all people-groups. ²⁷ They will control them as if they were striking them with an iron rod. They will destroy evildoers just as people shatter clay pots. ²⁸ I do all of this with the authority my Father gave me, and I will give the morning star to those who rule with me so that we may have great joy in our victory. ²⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

²⁶ The one who conquers and who does what I have done until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.

²⁷ 'He will rule them with an iron rod,
like clay jars he will break them into pieces.'

²⁸ Just as I have received from my Father, I will also give him the morning star. ²⁹ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. “”

translationWords:

- authority
- nation
- rod
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

translationNotes:

- **The one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “The person who does not agree to do evil.” See how you translated this in [2:7](#) (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **He will rule ... break them into pieces** - This is a prophecy from the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applied it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.
- **He will rule them with an iron rod** - Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. AT: “He will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like clay jars he will break them into pieces** - Breaking them to pieces is an image that represents either 1) destroying evildoers or 2) defeating enemies. AT: “He will defeat his enemies completely like breaking clay jars into pieces” (See: [Simile](#))

- **Just as I have received from my Father** - Some languages may need to tell what was received. Possible meanings are 1) “Just as I have received authority from my Father” or 2) Just as I have received the morning star from my Father. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **my Father** - This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **I will also give him** - Here “him” refers to the one who conquers.
- **morning star** - This is a bright star that appears early in the morning just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **Let the one who has an ear listen** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 02 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 form a single unit. This section is usually referred to as the “seven letters to the seven churches.” The translator may wish to set these letters apart from each other to clearly distinguish them from each other.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:7, which is a reference to the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven spirits of God

The exact meaning of this phrase is unclear. It is possibly a reference to the Holy Spirit with the number 7 symbolizing “completeness.” It may also be a reference to the seven spirits surrounding the throne of God. It should be unnecessary to specifically define it in translation.

Seven stars

These are probably a reference to the leaders of the churches. (See: [1:20](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Some scholars take chapter 2 and 3 as a metaphor. They understand these churches to refer to types of churches or historical periods of the church. It is best to translate this as instructions to ancient churches in each of these cities. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The phrase “Look, I stand at the door and knock” is another extended metaphor describing Jesus’ readiness and willingness to accept anyone who repents and believes in him. (See: [repent, repentance](#) and [believe, believe in, belief](#))

“If you have an ear, listen to what the Spirit says to the churches.”

This is a phrase which acts as a call to repentance for those in the church.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” This is possibly a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

Links:

- **Revelation 03:01 Notes**

Revelation 3:1-2

UDB:

¹ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Sardis. 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who has the seven spirits of God and the seven stars. I know everything that you have done. You appear to be alive, but you are dead. ² Be alert! Do more work for me, or what you have already done will become worthless. You must do this because my God knows that you have not done enough.

ULB:

3 ¹ "To the angel of the church in Sardis write:

"These are the words of the one who holds the seven spirits of God and the seven stars. "I know what you have done. You have a reputation that you are alive, but you are dead. ² Wake up and strengthen what remains, but is about to die, because I have not found your deeds complete in the sight of my God.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- God
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Sardis.
- **Sardis** - This is the name of a city in Asia, which is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the seven spirits** - The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the seven stars** - These stars are symbols. They appear to represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [1:16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **alive ... dead** - Obeying and honoring God is spoken of as being alive; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Wake up** - Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. AT: "Be alert" or "Be careful" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **strengthen what remains, but is about to die** - The good deeds done by the believers in Sardis are spoken of as if they were alive but in danger of dying. AT: “complete the work that remains, or what you have done will become worthless” or “if you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:3-4

UDB:

³ So then, keep remembering God's message and the truth that you accepted when you heard it. Always obey it and turn away from your sinful behavior. If you do not do this, I will come to you when you are not expecting me, as a thief comes. You will never know at what time I will come to judge you. ⁴ Nevertheless, you have a few believers there in the city of Sardis who have not been doing what is wrong. It is as though they have not dirtied their garments. As a result, because they are worthy to live with me, they will live with me and will be pure in every way, like people who are dressed in pure white clothing.

ULB:

³ Remember, therefore, what you have received and heard. Obey it, and repent. But if you do not wake up, I will come as a thief, and you will not know what hour I will come against you. ⁴ But there are a few names of the people in Sardis who did not make their clothes dirty. They will walk with me, dressed in white, for they are worthy.

translationWords:

- receive
- repent, repentance
- thief, thieves, robber
- hour
- walk
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

translationNotes:

- **what you have received and heard** - This refers to God's word, which they believed. AT: "God's word, which you heard and the truth that you believed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **if you do not wake up** - Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. AT: "Be alert" or "Be careful." See how you translated "wake up" on 3:2 (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will come as a thief** - Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected. (See: [Simile](#))
- **a few names of the people** - This refers to the people themselves. AT: "a few people" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **did not make their clothes dirty** - Jesus speaks of sin in a person's life as if it were dirty clothes. AT: "have not made their lives sinful like dirty clothes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **will walk with me** - People commonly spoke of living as “walking.” AT: “will live with me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **dressed in white** - White clothes represent a pure life without sin. AT: “and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Those who conquer Satan I will dress in these same white garments. I will never erase their names from the Book of Life that contains the names of the people who have eternal life. Instead, I will acknowledge in the presence of my Father and his angels that they belong to me . ⁶ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God’s Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

⁵ The one who conquers will be clothed in white garments, and I will never wipe his name out of The Book of Life, and I will speak his name before my Father, and before his angels. ⁶ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches.“”

translationWords:

- clothe, clothed
- name
- Book of Life
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- angel, archangel
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- church, Church

translationNotes:

- **The one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Those who do not agree to do evil.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases**)
- **will be clothed in white garments** - This can be translated with an active verb. AT: “will wear white garments” or “I will give him white clothes” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **I will speak his name** - He would not simply say the person’s name, but announce that the person belongs to him. AT: “I will announce that he belongs to me” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **my Father** - This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: **Translating Son and Father**)
- **Let the one who has an ear listen** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:7-8

UDB:

⁷ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Philadelphia: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the One who is holy, the True One. Just as King David had authority to allow people to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people to enter my kingdom. I am the one who opens doors so that no one can close them and the one who closes doors so that no one can open them. ⁸ I know everything you have done. Be aware that I have opened a door for you that no one can close. I know that although you have little power, you have obeyed what I say, and you have not denied that you believe in me.

ULB:

⁷ "To the angel of the church in Philadelphia write:

'These are the words of the one who is holy and true—
 he holds the key of David,
 he opens and no one shuts,
 he shuts and no one can open.

⁸ "I know what you have done. Look, I have put before you an open door that no one can shut. I know that you have little strength, yet you have obeyed my word and have not denied my name.

translationWords:

- holy, holiness
- true, truth, come true
- David
- strength, strengthen

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Philadelphia.
- **key of David** - Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's key. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **he opens and no one shuts** - "he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"
- **he shuts and no one can open** - "he closes the door and no one can open it"
- **I have put before you an open door** - "I have opened a door for you"
- **my name** - The word "name" is often used to refer to the person who has that name. AT: "me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Be careful! I am aware that some of your people meet together with those who follow Satan. They claim to be Jews, but I know that they are not true Jews. They are lying. I will cause them to come to you and to bow down humbly at your feet and to acknowledge that I love you.

¹⁰ Because you have obeyed me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently, I will keep you safe from those who will try to make you disobey me. They will soon do this to everyone in the entire world. ¹¹ I am coming soon. So continue to do what I have told you, in order that no one may cause you to lose your reward that God has reserved for you.

ULB:

⁹ Look! Those who belong to the synagogue of Satan, those who say they are Jews but are not; they are lying instead. I will make them come and bow down before your feet, and they will come to know that I loved you. ¹⁰ Since you have kept my command to endure patiently, I will also keep you from the hour of testing that is coming on the whole world, to test those who live on the earth. ¹¹ I am coming soon. Hold tight to what you have so no one can take away your crown.

translationWords:

- **synagogue**
- **Satan, devil, evil one**
- **Jew, Jewish, Jews**
- **bow, bow down**
- **love**
- **command, to command, commandment**
- **endure, endurance**
- **patient, patience**
- **hour**
- **test**
- **crown, to crown**

translationNotes:

- **synagogue of Satan** - People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. See how you translated this in [2:9](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bow down** - This is a sign of submission, not worship. AT: “bow down in submission” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **before your feet** - “before you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **they will come to know** - “they will learn” or “they will admit”
- **will also keep you from the hour of testing** - “will also keep you safe in the hour of testing”
- **hour of testing** - “time of testing.” This probably means “the time when people try to make you disobey me.”
- **is coming** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I am coming soon** - It is understood that he is coming in order to judge. AT: “I am coming to judge soon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Hold tight** - “Continue to believe” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **crown** - A crown was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete. Here “crown” stands for a reward. See how you translated “crown” in [2:10](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:12-13

UDB:

¹² I will make those who conquer Satan secure. They will be firm like the pillars in the temple of my God, and they will remain there forever. I will mark them with the name of my God, showing that they belong to him. I will also mark them with the name of the city of my God, the New Jerusalem, the city that will descend out of heaven from my God. I will also mark them with my new name, showing that they belong to me. ¹³ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

¹² I will make the one who conquers a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will never go out of it. I will write on him the name of my God, the name of the city of my God (the new Jerusalem, that comes down out of heaven from my God), and my new name. ¹³ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. “”

translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)
- [temple](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **the one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “anyone who resists evil” or “those who do not agree to do evil.” See how you translated this in [2:7](#). (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **pillar in the temple of my God** - The “pillar” represents becoming an important and permanent part of God's kingdom. AT: “strong like a pillar in the temple of my God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Let the one who has an ear** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen.” See how you translated this in [2:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 03 Translation Questions

Revelation 3:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Laodicea: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who guarantees all of God's promises. I am the one who testifies about God reliably and accurately. I am the ruler over all of God's creation. ¹⁵ I know everything that you have done: You do not deny that you trust in me, but you do not love me much. You are like water that is neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! ¹⁶ Because you are neither hot or cold, I am about to reject you, as if I were spitting lukewarm water out of my mouth.

ULB:

¹⁴ "To the angel of the church in Laodicea write:

'These are the words of the Amen, the reliable and true witness, the ruler over God's creation. ¹⁵ "I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! ¹⁶ So, because you are lukewarm—neither hot nor cold—I am about to vomit you out of my mouth.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- church, Church
- true, truth, come true
- witness, eyewitness
- ruler, rulers, rule
- God
- create, creation, Creator

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Laodicea.
- **the words of the Amen** - Here "the Amen" is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.
- **the ruler over God's creation** - Possible meanings are 1) "the one who rules over everything that God created" or 2) "the one through whom God created everything."
- **you are neither cold nor hot** - "Cold" and hot" represent two extremes of spiritual interest or love for God. To be "cold" is to be completely against God, and to be "hot" is to be zealous to serve him. AT: "you are like water that is neither cold nor hot" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **lukewarm** - “slightly warm.” This describes someone who has only a small amount of spiritual interest or conviction. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I am about to vomit you out of my mouth** - Rejecting them is spoken of as vomiting them out of the mouth. AT: “I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ You are saying, 'I am rich and have acquired a lot of wealth. I lack nothing!' But you do not realize that you are lacking in many ways. You are like people who are very wretched and pitiful, poor, blind, and naked. ¹⁸ I advise you to obtain from me all that you need, as though you were buying from me pure gold so that you may be truly rich. Let me make you righteous, as though you were buying from me white garments so that you might wear clothes instead of being naked and ashamed. Let me help you to understand the truth, as though you were buying from me eye salve to put on sick eyes.

ULB:

¹⁷ For you say, 'I am rich, I have had many material possessions, and I need nothing.' But you do not know that you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked. ¹⁸ Listen to my advice: Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see.

translationWords:

- gold
- fire
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- anoint, anointed

translationNotes:

- **you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked** - Jesus speaks of their spiritual condition as if he were speaking about their physical condition. AT: "You are like people who are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Buy from me gold refined by fire** - Gold that is refined in fire is pure and very valuable. Here the salvation that Jesus offers mankind is spoken of as if it were gold. AT: "Receive from me what is really most valuable, as if it were gold refined by fire" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **may become rich** - This refers to spiritual wealth, living a life that is most valuable in God's sight. AT: "may be spiritually rich" or "may live a most valuable life" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **brilliant white garments** - White garments represent righteousness. AT: "righteousness, like white garments" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so you will see** - Seeing stands for understanding the truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Since I rebuke and correct all those whom I love, turn away with all your heart from your sinful behavior. ²⁰ Be aware that I am calling each one of you to respond to me as though I were standing and waiting at your door and knocking. I will come to all those who hear my voice, open the door, and invite me in. I will come in and be with them as friends do when they eat together.

ULB:

¹⁹ I train everyone whom I love, and I teach them how they should live. Therefore, be earnest and repent. ²⁰ Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into his home and will eat with him, and he with me.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)

translationNotes:

- **be earnest and repent** - “be serious and repent”
- **I am standing at the door and am knocking** - Jesus speaks about wanting people to relate to him as if he wanted them to invite him into their home. AT: “I am like one standing at the door and knocking” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and am knocking** - When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they knock on the door. AT: “and I want you to let me come inside” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **hears my voice** - The phrase “my voice” refers to Christ speaking. AT: “hears me speak” or “hears me call” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will come into his home** - Some languages might prefer the verb “go” here. AT: “I will go in to his home” (See: [Go and Come](#))
- **and will eat with him** - This represents being together as friends. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 03 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 3:21-22

UDB:

²¹ I will permit everyone who conquers Satan to sit and rule with me on my throne, just as I conquered Satan and now sit and rule with my Father on his throne. ²² Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

²¹ The one who conquers, I will give him the right to sit down with me on my throne, just as I also conquered and sat down with my Father on his throne. ²² Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches.“”

translationWords:

- throne
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- church, Church

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This is the end of the Son of Man's messages to the angels of the seven churches.
- **The one who conquers** - This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Those who do not agree to do evil.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))
- **to sit down with me on my throne** - To sit on a throne means to rule. AT: “to rule with me” or “to sit down on my throne and rule with me” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **my Father** - This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **Let the one who has an ear listen** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen.” See how you translated this in 2:7. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 03 General Notes
- **Revelation 03 Translation Questions**

Revelation 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart the sayings of the four living creatures (4:8) and the 24 elders (4:11). This is typically done through the use of indentation.

This chapter begins the remainder of the book of Revelation and it is markedly different than the first three chapters. It now describes an unfolding image John sees in his vision.

Special concepts in this chapter

Glory

The whole of this chapter is an image describing a scene in heaven where everything constantly gives glory to God. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [glory](#), [glorious](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The description of the person sitting on the throne contains many similes. Many cultures do not have these specific gem stones and it is possible that these have symbolic significance. (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Difficult images

There are many images that may appear difficult or impossible. For example, bolts of lighting coming from the throne, lamps that are the seven spirits of God or a sea in front of the throne. It is best to allow these difficulties to remain in the translation. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 04:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ After these things I, John, saw in the vision that there was a door open in heaven. The one whose voice was like a loud trumpet, the one who had spoken to me previously, said to me, “Come up here! I will show you events that must happen later.” ² Immediately I experienced that God’s Spirit was specially controlling me. There was a throne there in heaven, and on the throne someone was sitting and ruling. ³ His appearance shone like a brilliant crystalline jasper jewel and like a brilliant red carnelian jewel. Around the throne was a rainbow that shone like a brilliant green emerald jewel.

ULB:

4 ¹ After these things I looked, and I saw an open door in heaven. The first voice that I had heard was speaking to me like a trumpet, saying, “Come up here, and I will show you what must happen after these things.” ² At once I was in the Spirit, and I saw there was a throne placed in heaven, with someone sitting on it. ³ The one who was sitting on it looked like jasper and carnelian. There was a rainbow around the throne. The rainbow looked like an emerald.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- voice
- like, likeness
- trumpet
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- throne

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe his vision of the throne of God.
- **After these things** - “after what John had just seen” (2:1-3:22)
- **an open door in heaven** - This expression stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **speaking to me like a trumpet** - How the voice was like a trumpet can be stated clearly. AT: “speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet” (See: **Simile**)
- **trumpet** - This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting. See how you translated this in 1:10.
- **I was in the Spirit** - John speaks of being influenced by God’s Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. AT: “influenced by the Spirit” or “the Spirit influenced me.” See how you translated this in 1:10. (See: **Idiom**)

- **jasper and carnelian** - valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **emerald** - a green, valuable stone (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 04 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 4:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Around the throne there were twenty-four other thrones. On these thrones twenty-four elders were sitting. They were wearing pure white garments and had golden crowns on their heads. ⁵ From the throne there came lightning and rumblings and thundering. In front of the throne were burning seven torches, which represent the seven spirits of God.

ULB:

⁴ Around the throne were twenty-four thrones, and seated on the thrones were twenty-four elders, dressed with white garments, with golden crowns on their heads. ⁵ From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings, and crashes of thunder. Seven lamps were burning in front of the throne, lamps that were the seven spirits of God.

translationWords:

- throne
- elder
- gold
- crown, to crown
- lamp
- God

translationNotes:

- **twenty-four elders** - “24 elders” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **golden crowns** - These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Such crowns, made of leaves, were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.
- **flashes of lightning** - Use your language’s way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.
- **rumblings, and crashes of thunder** - These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language’s way of describing the sound of thunder.
- **seven spirits of God** - The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The “seven spirits” refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 04 General Notes
- **Revelation 04 Translation Questions**

Revelation 4:6

UDB:

⁶ In front of the throne there was also what looked like a sea made of glass. It was clear, like crystal. On each of the four sides of the throne there was a living creature. Each one was covered with eyes in front and behind.

ULB:

⁶ Before the throne was a sea of glass, like crystal. In the middle of the throne and around the throne were four living creatures, full of eyes, front and back.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)

translationNotes:

- **a sea of glass** - How it was like glass or a sea can be stated clearly. Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. AT: “a sea that was as smooth as glass” or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. AT: “glass that was spread out like a sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **like crystal** - How it was like crystal can be stated clearly. AT: “clear as crystal” (See: [Simile](#))
- **In the middle of the throne and around the throne** - “Immediately around the throne” or “Close to the throne and around it”
- **four living creatures** - “four living beings” or “four living things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 04 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 4:7-8

UDB:

7-8 The first living creature was like a lion. The second living creature was like an ox. The third living creature had a face like a man's face. The fourth living creature was like an eagle that was flying. Each of the four living creatures had six wings. These wings were covered with eyes both top and bottom. Day and night they constantly say:

"Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, who rules over all.
He is the one who has always existed,
who exists now, and who will always exist."

ULB:

⁷ The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle. ⁸ The four living creatures each had six wings, full of eyes on top and underneath. Night and day they do not stop saying,

"Holy, holy, holy
is the Lord God Almighty
who was, and who is, and who is to come."

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- like, likeness
- lion
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- face
- eagle
- holy, holiness
- Lord
- Almighty

translationNotes:

- **living creature** - "living being" or "living thing." See how you translated this in [4:6](#)
- **full of eyes on top and underneath** - The top and bottom of each wing was covered with eyes.
- **who is to come** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 04 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 4:9-11**UDB:**

9-10 The living creatures praise, honor, and thank the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever. Whenever they do that, the twenty-four elders lie down on the ground before the one who sits on the throne. They worship him, the one who lives forever and ever. They lay their crowns in front of the throne and say:

¹¹ "Our Lord and God,
you are worthy that all beings should praise you;
you are worthy that all beings honor you; and
you are worthy that all beings acknowledge
that you are the powerful one.
Because you alone created all things.
Moreover, because you intended that they should exist,
you created them; as a result, they exist."

ULB:

⁹ Whenever the living creatures gave glory, honor, and thanks to the one who was seated on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever, ¹⁰ the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before the one seated on the throne. They bowed down to the one living forever and ever, and they threw down their crowns before the throne, saying,

¹¹ "Worthy are you, our Lord and our God,
to receive the glory and the honor and the power.
For you created all things,
and by your will, they existed and were created."

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- glory, glorious
- honor, to honor
- throne
- forever
- elder
- bow, bow down

- crown, to crown
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- Lord
- God
- power, powers
- create, creation, Creator

translationNotes:

- **the one who was seated on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever** - This is one person. The one who was seated on the throne lives forever and ever.
- **forever and ever** - These two words mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. AT: “for all eternity” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **twenty-four elders** - “24 elders.” See how you translated this in [4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))
- **prostrated themselves** - They lay down facing the ground.
- **they threw down their crowns before the throne** - These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads. The elders were showing that they were submitting to God’s authority to rule. AT: “they threw down their crowns before the throne to show that they were submitting to him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **our Lord and our God** - “our Lord and God.” This is one person, the one who was sitting on the throne.
- **to receive the glory and the honor and the power** - These are things that God always has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. AT: “to be praised for his glory, honor, and power” or “for everyone to praise him because he is glorious, honorable, and powerful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 04 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart the songs in [5:9-10](#), [5:12](#) and [5:13](#). This is typically done through the use of indentation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sealed scroll

A sealed scroll contains a written message hidden and waiting to be read. The scroll can only be read by the person with the authority to open it.

24 elders

This is probably a reference to church leaders, but the identity of the twenty-four elders is uncertain. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Christian prayers

The prayers of Christian are connected with incense. Christian prayers have a good smell to God. He is pleased when Christians pray.

Seven spirits of God

The exact meaning of this phrase is unclear. It is possibly a symbolic reference to the Holy Spirit with the number 7 symbolizing “completeness.” It may also not be symbolic, and reference seven spirits surrounding the throne of God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The “Lion of the tribe of Judah” and the “Root of David” are references to Jesus. They are metaphors and they function as titles for Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 05:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ I saw that there was a scroll in the right hand of the one who was sitting on the throne. The scroll was written on its outside as well as on its inside, and it was sealed with seven seals. ² I saw a strong angel who was announcing in a loud voice, “The person who is worthy to break the seals of the scroll and then to open it should come and do it!”

ULB:

5 ¹ Then I saw in the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne, a scroll written on the front side and the back side. It had been sealed with seven seals. ² I saw a powerful angel proclaiming with a loud voice, “Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?”

translationWords:

- right hand
- throne
- scroll
- seal, to seal
- angel, archangel
- proclaim, proclamation
- voice
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues to describe what he saw in his vision of the throne of God.
- **Then I saw** - “After I saw those things, I saw”
- **the one who was seated on the throne** - This is the same “one” as in 4:2-3.
- **a scroll written on the front side and the back side** - “a scroll with writing on the front and the back”
- **It had been sealed with seven seals** - “It had seven seals keeping it closed”
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** - The person would need to break the seals in order to open the scroll. AT: “Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?” (See: [Order of Events](#))
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** - This can be translated as a command: “Let the one who is worthy to do this come break the seals and open the scroll!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5:3-5

UDB:

³ But no created being in heaven, on the earth, or under it was able to open the scroll and see what was written on it. ⁴ I wept loudly because there was no one worthy to do that. ⁵ But one of the elders said to me, “Do not cry any longer! Look, the one who is called the Lion from the tribe of Judah, who is the descendant and heir of King David, has overcome Satan! As a result, he is worthy to break the seven seals on the scroll and to open it!”

ULB:

³ No one in heaven or on the earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to read it. ⁴ I wept bitterly because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it. ⁵ But one of the elders said to me, “Do not weep. Look! The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals.”

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- scroll
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- elder
- lion
- tribe
- Judah
- David
- seal, to seal

translationNotes:

- **in heaven or on the earth or under the earth** - This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. (See: [Merism](#))
- **Look** - “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **The Lion of the tribe of Judah** - This is a title for the man from the tribe of Judah that God had promised would be the great king. AT: “The one who is called the Lion of the Tribe of Judah” or “The king who is called the Lion of the Tribe of Judah”
- **The Lion** - The king is spoken of as if he were a lion because a lion is very strong. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the Root of David** - This is a title for the descendant of David that God had promised would be the great king. AT: “the one who is called the Root of David”

- **the Root of David** - The descendant is spoken of as if David's family were a tree and he were a root of that tree. AT: "the Descendant of David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then I saw a Lamb standing there in the midst of the four living creatures and the elders around the throne. Although he was alive, he had marks that showed that someone had killed him. He had seven horns, and he had seven eyes that are the seven spirits of God that God sends out over all the earth. ⁷ The Lamb came and took the scroll from the right hand of the one sitting on the throne.

ULB:

⁶ I saw a Lamb standing between the throne and the four living creatures and among the elders. He looked as though he had been killed. He had seven horns and seven eyes; these are the seven spirits of God sent out over all the earth. ⁷ He went and took hold of the scroll out of the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne.

translationWords:

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The Lamb appears in the throne room. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))
- **a Lamb** - A “lamb” is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **seven spirits of God** - The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The “seven spirits” refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **sent out over all the earth** - This can be translated with an active verb. AT: “that God sent out over all the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He went** - He approached the throne. Some languages would use the verb “come”. AT: “He came” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 05 General Notes
- **Revelation 05 Translation Questions**

Revelation 5:8

UDB:

⁸ When he took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before him. They each had a harp, and they had golden bowls full of incense that represents the prayers of God's people.

ULB:

⁸ When the Lamb took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before him. Each of them had a harp and a golden bowl full of incense, which is the prayers of the believers.

translationWords:

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [harp](#)
- [incense](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [believer](#)

translationNotes:

- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **twenty-four elders** - "24 elders." See how you translated this in [4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))
- **prostrated themselves** - "lay down on the ground." Their faces were toward the ground.
- **Each of them** - Possible meanings are 1) "each of the elders and living creatures" or 2) "each of the elders."
- **a golden bowl full of incense, which is the prayers of the believers** - The incense here is a symbol for the believers' prayers to God. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The living creatures and the elders sang a new song. They sang:

”You are worthy to receive the scroll and to open its seals
because you were killed, and because you redeemed
people for God from every tribe, language, people,
and people group with your blood when you died.

¹⁰ You have caused them to become a people over whom our God rules
and to become priests who serve him; they will rule on the earth.”

ULB:

⁹ They sang a new song:

”You are worthy to take the scroll
and to open its seals.

For you were slaughtered, and with your blood you purchased people for
God
from every tribe, language, people, and nation.

¹⁰ You made them a kingdom and priests to serve our God,
and they will reign on the earth.”

translationWords:

- blood
- God
- tribe
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- kingdom
- priest, priesthood
- reign

translationNotes:

- **For you were slaughtered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “For they slaughtered you” or “For people killed you” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **slaughtered** - If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.
- **with your blood** - Since blood represents a person's life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means "by your death" or "by dying." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you purchased people for God** - "you bought people so that they could belong to God" or "you paid the price so that people could belong to God"
- **from every tribe, language, people, and nation** - This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ As I continued to look, I heard the voices of many angels around the throne and around the living creatures and the elders. There were millions of them, a crowd so large that no one could count them. ¹² They were singing in a loud voice:

”The Lamb whom they killed—

it is right that we should praise his power, wealth, wisdom, and strength.

It is right that all created things should honor him and praise him!”

ULB:

¹¹ Then I looked and heard the sound of many angels around the throne and the living creatures and the elders. Their total number was ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands.

¹² They said in a loud voice,

“Worthy is the Lamb who has been slaughtered to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise.”

translationWords:

- power, powers
- wise, wisdom
- honor, to honor
- glory, glorious
- praise

translationNotes:

- **ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands** - Use an expression in your language that shows that it is a huge number. AT: “millions” or “too many thousands to count” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Worthy is the Lamb** - “The Lamb is worthy”
- **to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise** - These are all things that the Lamb has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. AT: “to be praised for his glory, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory.” See how you translated a similar sentence in [4:11](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Worthy ... to receive ... praise** - This means that he deserves that everyone should praise him. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 5:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ And I heard every creature in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea say,

”We must forever praise, honor, and glorify the one who sits on the throne and the lamb.

May they reign with complete power forever!”

¹⁴ The four living creatures said, “May it be so!” Then the elders prostrated themselves on the ground and worshiped God and the lamb.

ULB:

¹³ I heard every created thing that was in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea—everything in them—saying,

“To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb, be praise, honor, glory, and the power to rule, forever and ever.”

¹⁴ The four living creatures said, “Amen!” and the elders prostrated themselves and worshiped.[1]Some older versions read, *the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever.*

translationWords:

- create, creation, Creator
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lamb, Lamb of God
- forever
- amen, truly
- worship

translationNotes:

- **in heaven and on the earth and under the earth** - his means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. See how you translated this in 5:3. (See: [Merism](#))
- **To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb, be praise, honor, glory** - The verb “give” can be used to show how praise, honor, and glory are “to” the one on the throne and the Lamb. AT: “We must give praise, honor, and glory to him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb”

- **and the power to rule, forever and ever** - The verb “have” can be used to show how power can be “to” the one on the throne and the Lamb. AT: “and may they have the power to rule forever and ever”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The image of the wrath of God in this chapter is intended to produce fear in those who hear these words. (See: [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven Seals

There is disagreement over how these seals are attached to the scroll. It would be logical if they were all side-by-side but the scroll would only have revealed its contents after the last seal is broken. This is not how this chapter describes the scroll because each seal reveals a judgment. It is also commonly believed that the absent seventh seal uncovers the seven trumpet judgments. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Inflation

The prices for things people need will suddenly be very expensive. People will not be able to afford the things they need to live. This is usually called “inflation.”

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This is a reference to Jesus. In this chapter, it also functions as a title for Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Similes

The author uses many different similes. This is because he is attempting to describe the image he sees in the vision. Therefore, he compares the images in this vision to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 06:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 6:1-2

UDB:

¹ I saw the Lamb open the first of the seven seals of the scroll. Then one of the four living creatures said in a voice as loud as thunder, "Come!" ² and a white horse appeared. There was someone riding it, and he had a bow and arrows. God gave him a wreath of leaves to wear on his head to show that he was to conquer evil. He went out to continue to do battle and to win.

ULB:

6 ¹ I looked when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures say in a voice that sounded like thunder, "Come!" ² I looked and there was a white horse. Its rider held a bow, and he was given a crown. He came out as a conqueror in order to conquer.

translationWords:

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, to seal](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [creature](#)
- [voice](#)
- [horse](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues to describe the events that happened before the throne of God. The Lamb begins to open the seals on the scroll.
- **Come!** - This is a command to one person, apparently the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.
- **he was given a crown** - This kind of crown was a likeness of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, probably hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads. This can be translated with an active verb. AT: "he received a crown" or "God gave him a crown (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a crown** - This was a wreath of olive branches or of laurel leaves like the wreaths that winning athletes received in contests at the time of John.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 06 General Notes
- **Revelation 06 Translation Questions**

Revelation 6:3-4

UDB:

³ Then the one looking like a Lamb opened the second seal, and I heard the second living creature say, “Come!” ⁴ When he said that, a red horse appeared. There was also someone riding it, and God had given him the power to cause people to no longer live peacefully, but instead to kill each other. For this purpose he carried a large sword.

ULB:

³ When the Lamb opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature say, “Come!” ⁴ Then another horse came out—fiery red. To its rider was given permission to take peace away from the earth, so that its people would slaughter one another. This rider was given a huge sword.

translationWords:

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, to seal](#)
- [creature](#)
- [horse](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **the second seal** - “the next seal” or “seal number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the second living creature** - “the next living creature” or “living creature number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **fiery red** - “it was red like fire” or “it was bright red”
- **To its rider was given permission** - This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “God gave permission to its rider” or “Its rider received person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **This rider was given a huge sword** - This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “This rider received a huge sword” or “God gave this rider a huge sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then the Lamb opened the third seal, and I heard the third living creature say, “Come!” This time, I saw a black horse appear. There was someone riding it, and he had a pair of balance scales in his hand. ⁶ Then I heard a voice that sounded like it was coming from among the four living creatures. It said to the person on the horse, “Make it happen that one liter of wheat will cost so much that a man must work a whole day to earn enough money to buy it. Also make it happen that three liters of barley will sell for the same price. But do not reduce the supply of olive oil or wine.”

ULB:

⁵ When the Lamb opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature say, “Come!” I saw a black horse, and its rider held a pair of scales in his hand. ⁶ I heard what seemed to be a voice among the four living creatures say, “A choenix of wheat for one denarius, and three choenices of barley for a denarius. But do not harm the oil and the wine.”

translationWords:

- wheat
- barley
- oil
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **the third seal** - “the next seal” or “seal number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the third living creature** - “the next living creature” or “living creature number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **a pair of scales** - a tool used for weighing things
- **A choenix of wheat for one denarius** - Some languages might want a verb such as “cost” or “buy” in the sentence. AT: “A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius” or “Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius” There was very little wheat for all the people, so its price was very high.
- **A choenix of wheat** - This refers to a specific measure that was about one liter. AT: “one liter” or “one bowl” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **one denarius** - This coin was worth a day’s wages. AT: “one silver coin” or “the pay for one day of work” (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **But do not harm the oil and the wine** - If the oil and wine were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.
- **the oil and the wine** - These expressions probably stand for the olive oil harvest and the grape harvest. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Then the Lamb opened the fourth seal, and I heard the fourth living creature say, “Come!” ⁸ This time I saw a pale horse appear. Someone was riding it; his name was, “The one who causes people to die.” Someone else was following him; this person’s name was, “The place where dead people go.” God gave these two persons power to kill one fourth of all people on earth. They could kill them with weapons, or with famine, or with sickness, or with wild animals.

ULB:

⁷ When the Lamb opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, “Come!”
⁸ Then I saw a pale horse. The rider on it was named Death, and Hades was following him. They were given authority over one-fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword, famine and disease, and with the wild animals of the earth.

translationWords:

- [name](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [hades, sheol](#)
- [famine](#)

translationNotes:

- **the fourth seal** - “the next seal” or “seal number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the fourth living creature** - “the next living creature” or “living creature number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **pale** - “grey.” This is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death.
- **one-fourth of the earth** - The earth here represents the people of the earth. AT: “one-fourth” of the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Fractions](#))
- **the sword** - A sword is a weapon, and here it represents war. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **with the wild animals of the earth** - This means that Death and Hades would cause the wild animals to attack and kill people.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Then the Lamb opened the fifth seal, and I saw under the altar in heaven the spirits of God's servants whom others had killed because these servants had believed God's message, the message to which God himself bore witness. ¹⁰ They loudly asked God, "Sovereign Lord, you are holy and true. How long will it be before you condemn and punish the people on earth who murdered us?" ¹¹ Then God gave to each of them a white robe, and he told them to be patient a little longer. They should be patient until the number of those who also served the Lord with them—who were their brothers and sisters in Christ—would be killed just like they themselves had been killed because of their faith.

ULB:

⁹ When the Lamb opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those who had been killed because of the word of God and the testimony which they held. ¹⁰ They cried out with a loud voice, "How long, Ruler over all, holy and true, until you judge those who live on the earth, and until you avenge our blood?" ¹¹ Then each of them was given a white robe, and they were told that they should wait a little longer until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers and sisters was reached who were to be killed, just as they had been killed.

translationWords:

- altar
- soul
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- testimony, testify
- ruler, rulers, rule
- holy, holiness
- true, truth, come true
- judge, judgment
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- robe
- servant, slave, slavery
- brother

translationNotes:

- **the fifth seal** - "the next seal" or "seal number five" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **under the altar** - This may have been "at the base of the altar."

- **those who had been killed** - This can be translated with an active verb. AT “those whom others had killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the word of God and the testimony** - Possible meanings are 1) the testimony is God’s witness to the truth of his word (as shown in the UDB), or 2) the testimony is the believers’ witness to the truth of God’s word.
- **which they held** - Believing the word of God and the testimony is spoken of as if they were objects that could be physically held in one’s hands. AT: “which they believed” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **avenge our blood** - The word blood here represents their deaths. AT: “punish those who killed us” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **until the full number ... were to be killed** - This implies that God had decided that a certain number of people should be killed by their enemies.
- **their fellow servants and their brothers and sisters** - This is one group of people described in two ways: as servants and as brothers and sisters. AT: “their brothers and sisters who serve God with them” or “their fellow believers who serve God with them”
- **brothers and sisters** - Christians are often spoken of as being one another’s brothers and sisters. AT: “fellow Christians” or “fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then I saw the Lamb open the sixth seal, and the earth shook violently. The sun became as black as cloth made of black wool. The whole moon became red like blood. ¹³ Stars fell to the earth in great numbers, just as immature figs fall when a fig tree shakes in a strong wind. ¹⁴ The sky split open and rolled up on either side just as an old scroll rolls up when it is split in two. Every mountain and island was shaken out of its place.

ULB:

¹² When the Lamb opened the sixth seal, I watched and there was a great earthquake. The sun became as black as sackcloth, and the full moon became like blood. ¹³ The stars in the heavens fell to the earth, just as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit when shaken by a stormy wind. ¹⁴ The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up. Every mountain and island was moved out of its place.

translationWords:

- lamb, Lamb of God
- seal, to seal
- sackcloth
- blood
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- fig
- scroll

translationNotes:

- **the sixth seal** - “the next seal” or “seal number six” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **as black as sackcloth** - Sometimes sackcloth was made of black hair. People would wear sackcloth when they were mourning. The image of sackcloth is meant to lead people to think of death and mourning. AT: “as black as mourning clothes” (See: [Simile](#))
- **like blood** - The image of blood is meant to lead people to think of death. How it was like blood can be stated clearly. AT: “red like blood” (See: [Simile](#))
- **just as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit when shaken by a stormy wind** - “just as unripened fruit easily falls in great quantities from a fig tree when a strong wind shakes it” (See: [Simile](#))
- **The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up** - The sky was normally thought of as being strong like a sheet of metal, but now it was weak like a sheet of paper and easily torn and rolled up. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 6:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ As a result, all the people on earth, including kings, high-ranking people, generals, rich people, powerful people, along with everybody else, both slave and free, hid in caves and between the mountain rocks. ¹⁶ They shouted to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us and hide us so that the one who sits on the throne will not be able to see us, and so that the Lamb will not be able to punish us! ¹⁷ This is the terrible day on which they will punish us. No one will be able to survive!"

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the kings of the earth and the important people, and the generals, the rich, the powerful, and everyone else, slave and free, hid in caves and among the rocks of the mountains. ¹⁶ They said to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us! Hide us from the face of the one who is seated on the throne and from the Lamb's wrath. ¹⁷ For the great day of their wrath has come. Who is able to stand?"

translationWords:

- king
- servant, slave, slavery
- face
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **the generals** - This word refers to the warriors who command in the battle.
- **caves** - large holes in the sides of hill
- **the face of the one** - This refers to God. They did not want God to see them and punish them. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **face** - Here "face" is used for the idea of "presence." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the great day of their wrath has come** - The day of their wrath refers to the time when they would punish wicked people. AT: "this is the terrible time when they will punish people" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **has come** - Existing now is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **their wrath** - "Their" refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.
- **Who is able to stand?** - Surviving, or staying alive, is spoken of as standing. This question is used to express their great sadness and fear that no one will be able to survive when God punishes them. AT: "No one can survive" (See: (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#)))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many scholars believe the first half of this chapter is about a great revival among the Hebrew people, where 144,000 will come to believe in Jesus. The tribe of Dan is noticeably absent from this list. The second half of this chapter would then be able a great revival among the Gentiles where countless Gentiles will come to believe in Jesus. (See: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

The ULB has chosen to set apart 7:5-8 and 7:15-17 through the use of indentation. These passages are extended prophecies. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Worship

The people in this chapter respond to these events with repentance and worship. This is the proper response to the information contained in this book. (See: [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [worship](#))

The Great Tribulation

This is a period when the people of the earth will be greatly punished by God. There is some disagreement about this period but many scholars believe it is a reference to the last half of the seven years of tribulation prophesied in Revelation 4-19, and in the rest of Scripture.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This is a reference to Jesus. In this chapter, it also functions as a title for Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 07:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ After this I saw four angels standing on the earth. One was standing at the north, one at the east, one at the south, and one at the west. They were keeping back the winds from blowing and destroying things on the earth, on the ocean, or even on any tree. ² Then I saw another angel come up from the east. He was carrying God's seal. With this seal God, who is all-powerful, marks his own people to protect them. This angel called out with a loud voice to the four angels whom God had told to harm the earth and the ocean. ³ He said to them, "Do not harm the earth or the ocean or the trees until we have marked the servants of our God on their foreheads."

ULB:

7 ¹ After this I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, tightly holding back the four winds of the earth so that no wind should blow on the earth, on the sea, or against any tree. ² I saw another angel coming up from the east, who had the seal of the living God. He cried out with a loud voice to the four angels who were given permission to harm the earth and the sea: ³ "Do not harm the earth, the sea, or the trees until we have put a seal on the foreheads of the servants of our God."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- seal, to seal
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- voice
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a vision of 144,000 servants of God who were marked with seals. This takes place between the Lamb opening the sixth and seventh seals.
- **the four corners of the earth** - The earth is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase "the four corners" refers to the north, south, east, and west.
- **the seal of the living God** - The word "seal" here refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God's people. AT: "the marker" or "stamp" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **put a seal on the foreheads** - The word “seal” here refers to a mark. This mark show that the people belong to God and that he would protect them. AT: “put a mark on the foreheads” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **foreheads** - The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Then the angel and his fellow angels marked all God's servants. I heard the number of people whom they marked. The number was 144,000. They were people from every tribe of Israel. ⁵ The angels marked twelve thousand people from the tribe of Judah, twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben, twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad, ⁶ twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher, twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali, twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh,

ULB:

⁴ I heard the number of those who were sealed: 144,000, who were sealed from every tribe of the people of Israel:

⁵ twelve thousand from the tribe of Judah were sealed,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad,
⁶ twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh.

translationWords:

- **tribe**
- **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel**
- **Judah**
- **Reuben**
- **Gad**
- **Asher**
- **Naphtali**
- **Manasseh**

translationNotes:

- **those who were sealed** - This can be stated with an active verb. AT: "those whom God's angel marked" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **144,000** - "one hundred forty-four thousand people" (See: **Numbers**)
- **twelve thousand from the tribe** - "12,000 people from the tribe" (See: **Numbers**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ twelve thousand from the tribe of Simeon, twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi, twelve thousand from the tribe of Issachar, ⁸ twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun, twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, and twelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin.

ULB:

⁷ twelve thousand from the tribe of Simeon,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Issachar,
⁸ twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, and
twelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin were sealed.

translationWords:

- [Simeon](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This continues the list of the people of Israel who were sealed.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7:9-10

UDB:

⁹ After these things happened, I saw a huge crowd. There were so many people that no one could count them. They were from every nation, every tribe, every people group, and every language. They were standing before the throne and before the lamb. They were wearing white robes and held palm branches to wave with their hands in order to celebrate. ¹⁰ They shouted loudly, “Our God, the one who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have rescued us from Satan’s power!”

ULB:

⁹ After these things I looked, and there was a huge multitude that no one could count—from every nation, tribe, people, and language—standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb. They were wearing white robes and holding palm branches in their hands, ¹⁰ and they were calling out with a loud voice:

“Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!”

translationWords:

- nation
- tribe
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- throne
- lamb, Lamb of God
- robe
- palm
- salvation
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a second vision about a multitude praising God. This is a different group of people than the 144,000 people who were sealed. This also takes place between the Lamb opening the sixth and seventh seals.
- **a huge multitude** - “a huge crowd” or “a great number of people”
- **white robes** - Here the color “white” represents purity.
- **Salvation belongs to** - “Salvation comes from”
- **Salvation belongs ... to the Lamb** - They were praising God and the Lamb. The noun “salvation” can be expressed with the verb “save.” AT “Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ All the angels were standing around the throne, around the elders, and around the four living creatures. They all lay before the throne with their faces to the ground and worshiped God. ¹² They said, “Yes, it is so! We praise, thank, and honor you, our God, forever! We acknowledge that you are completely wise, the powerful one, who is able to do all things forever! It is so!”

ULB:

¹¹ All the angels were standing around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they prostrated themselves on their faces before the throne. They worshiped God, ¹² saying,

“Amen! Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God forever and ever! Amen!”

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- throne
- elder
- creature
- worship
- God
- amen, truly
- praise
- glory, glorious
- wise, wisdom
- honor, to honor
- power, powers
- forever

translationNotes:

- **All the angels ... living creatures** - “All the angels stood around the throne and the elders and the four living creatures”
- **the four living creatures** - These are the four creatures mentioned in [4:6-8](#).
- **they prostrated themselves on their faces** - They lay down facing the ground. See how you translated a similar expression in [4:10](#).
- **Praise, glory ... be to our God** - “Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength”

- **Praise, glory ... thanksgiving, honor ... be to our God** - The verb “give” can be used to show how praise, glory, and honor, are to be “to” God. AT: “We must give praise, glory, thanks, and honor to our God”
- **wisdom, ... power, and strength ... be to our God** - “our God has all wisdom, power, and strength”
- **forever and ever** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 7:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Then one of the elders asked me, “These people who are wearing white robes, do you know who they are and from where they come?” ¹⁴ I answered him, “Sir, I do not know. Surely you know who they are!” He said to me, “These are the people who have come through the Great Tribulation. The Lamb died for them, and God has forgiven them for their sins. It is as if they have washed their robes in his blood and made them clean.

ULB:

¹³ Then one of the elders asked me, “Who are these, clothed with white robes, and where did they come from?” ¹⁴ I said to him, “Sir, you know,” and he said to me, “These are the ones who have come out of the Great Tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

translationWords:

- [elder](#)
- [tribulation](#)
- [blood](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

translationNotes:

- **clothed with white robes** - These white robes showed that they were righteous.
- **have come out of the Great Tribulation** - “have survived the Great Tribulation” or “have lived through the Great Tribulation”
- **the Great Tribulation** - “the time of terrible suffering” or “the time when people will suffer terribly”
- **They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb** - Being made righteous by the blood of the Lamb is spoken of as washing their robes in his blood. AT: “They have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb** - The word “blood” is used to refer to the death of Lamb. His death can be spoken of clearly. AT: “They have been made righteous by washing their robes in his death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 07 Translation Questions

Revelation 7:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Because of this, they are in front of God's throne, and they worship him day and night in his temple. God, the one who sits on the throne, will protect them. ¹⁶ As a result, they will never again be hungry. They will never again be thirsty. The sun will never again beat on them, nor will any heat scorch them. ¹⁷ This is because the Lamb who is at the throne will take care of them, just as a shepherd takes care of his sheep. He will guide them to the source of eternal life, just as a shepherd leads his sheep to springs of water. God will cause them to no longer be sad. It will be as if he were wiping away all tears from their eyes."

ULB:

- ¹⁵ For this reason, they are before the throne of God,
 and they worship him day and night in his temple.
 The one who is seated on the throne will spread his tent over them.
- ¹⁶ They will not be hungry again, nor will they be thirsty again.
 The sun will not beat down on them,
 nor any burning heat.
- ¹⁷ For the Lamb in the middle of the throne will be their shepherd,
 and he will guide them to springs of living water,
 and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes."

translationWords:

- throne
- God
- worship
- temple
- tent
- lamb, Lamb of God
- shepherd, to shepherd
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The elder continues to speak to John.

- **they ... them ... their** - All of these refer to those people who have come through the Great Tribulation.
- **day and night** - These two parts of the day are used together to mean “all the time” or “without stopping” (See: [Merism](#))
- **will spread his tent over them** - “will put his tent up over them.” Protecting them is spoken of as if he were giving them shelter to live under. AT: “will shelter them” or “will protect them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The sun will not beat down** - The sun’s heat is compared to punishment that causes people to suffer. AT: “The sun will not burn them” or “The sun will not make them weak” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the Lamb in the middle of the throne** - “the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne” or “the Lamb is who is at the throne”
- **For the Lamb ... will be their shepherd** - The elder speaks of the Lamb’s care for his people as if it were the shepherd’s care for his sheep. AT: “For the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them” or “For the Lamb ... will care for them as a shepherd cares for his sheep” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he will guide them to springs of living water** - The elder speaks of what gives life as if it were springs of fresh water. AT: “he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water” or “he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **God will wipe away every tear from their eyes** - Tears here represent sadness. AT: “God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears” or “God will cause them to not be sad anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven Seals

There is disagreement over how these seals are attached to the scroll. It would be logical if they were all side-by-side but the scroll would only have revealed its contents after the last seal is broken. This is not how this chapter describes the scroll because each seal reveals a judgment. It is also commonly held that the absent seventh seal uncovers the seven trumpet judgments. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Passive Voice

The passive voice is frequently used in this chapter to hide the identity of the the subject performing the action. This will be difficult to convey if the translator's language does not have a passive voice. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Similes

The author uses many different similes. This is because he is attempting to describe the image he sees in the vision. Therefore, he compares the images in this vision to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 08:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 8:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then the Lamb opened the seventh seal, and there was no sound at all in heaven for a short time.

² I saw the seven angels who stand in front of God. He gave each of them a trumpet.

ULB:

8 ¹ When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was a silence in heaven for about half an hour.

² Then I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.

translationWords:

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, to seal](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The Lamb opens the seventh seal.
- **the seventh seal** - This is the last of the seven seals on the scroll. AT: “the next seal” or “the final seal” or “seal number seven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **seven trumpets were given to them** - They were each given one trumpet. This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “God gave them seven trumpets” or 2) “the Lamb gave them seven trumpets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8:3-5

UDB:

³ Another angel came and stood at the altar. He had a golden bowl for burning incense. God gave him a large quantity of incense in order that he might offer it, with the prayers of all God's people, on the gold altar that is in front of God's throne. Then he burned this incense on the altar. ⁴ From the bowl in the angel's hand, the smoke of the incense, along with the prayers of God's people, went up to God. ⁵ Then the angel took the golden bowl and filled it with coals of fire from the altar. He threw it all onto the earth. Thunder crashed and rumbled, lightning flashed, and the earth shook.

ULB:

³ Another angel came, holding a golden incense bowl, standing at the incense altar. Much incense was given to him so that he would offer it with the prayers of all the believers on the golden incense altar before the throne. ⁴ The smoke of the incense, with the prayers of the believers, rose up before God from the angel's hand. ⁵ The angel took the incense bowl and filled it with fire from the altar. Then he threw it down to the earth, and there were crashes of thunder, rumblings, flashes of lightning, and an earthquake.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [gold](#)
- [incense](#)
- [altar](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [believer](#)
- [throne](#)
- [fire](#)

translationNotes:

- **he would offer it** - "he would offer the incense to God by burning it"
- **the angel's hand** - This refers to the bowl in the angel's hand. AT: "the bowl in the angel's hand" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **filled it with fire** - The word "fire" here probably refers to burning coals. AT: "filled it with burning coals" "or "filled it with coals of fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 08 General Notes
- **Revelation 08 Translation Questions**

Revelation 8:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then the seven angels, each of which had one of the seven trumpets, got ready to blow them. ⁷ The first angel blew his trumpet, and hail and fire mixed with blood poured down onto the earth. As a result, one third of everything on the surface of the land was burned up: one third of the trees burned up, and one third of all the green grass was burned up.

ULB:

⁶ The seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared to sound them.

⁷ The first angel sounded his trumpet, and there was hail and fire mixed with blood. It was thrown down onto the earth so that a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up.[1]Some older versions leave out, *so that a third of it was burned up*.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [hail](#)
- [fire](#)
- [blood](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The seven angels sound the seven trumpets, one at a time.
- **It was thrown down onto the earth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Then the second angel blew his trumpet, and something that was like a huge mountain burning with fire fell into the ocean. As a result, one third of the ocean became red like blood, ⁹ one third of the living creatures in the ocean died, and one third of the ships in the ocean were destroyed.

ULB:

⁸ The second angel sounded his trumpet, and something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea. A third of the sea became blood, ⁹ a third of the living creatures in the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- trumpet
- fire
- blood
- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **The second angel** - “The next angel” or “Angel number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **A third of the sea became blood** - “It was like the sea was divided into three parts, and one of those parts became blood” (See: [Fractions](#))
- **became blood** - Possible meanings are it 1) “became red like blood” or it 2) really became blood. (See: [Simile](#))
- **a third of the living creatures in the sea died** - “It was like all the living creatures in the sea were divided into three groups, and all of the creatures in one of those groups died.” (See: [Fractions](#))
- **the living creatures in the sea** - “the things living in the sea” or “the fish and other animals that lived in the sea”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Then the third angel blew his trumpet, and a huge star, which was burning like a torch, fell from the sky into one third of the rivers and into one third of the springs of water. ¹¹ The name of the star is Bitterness. As a result, the water in one third of the rivers and springs became bitter. Many people died from drinking the water because it had become bitter.

ULB:

¹⁰ The third angel sounded his trumpet, and a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch, on a third of the rivers and springs of water. ¹¹ The name of the star is Wormwood. A third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died from the waters that became bitter.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fountain, spring](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

- **and a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch** - “and a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky.” The fire of the huge star looked similar to the fire of a torch. (See: [Simile](#))
- **torch** - a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light
- **The name of the star is Wormwood** - Wormwood is a shrub that tastes bitter. People made medicine out of it, but they also believed that it was poisonous. AT: “The name of the star is Bitterness” or “The name of the star is Bitter Medicine” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **became wormwood** - The bitter taste of the water is spoken of as if it were wormwood. AT: “became bitter like wormwood” or “became bitter” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **died from the waters that became bitter** - “died when they drank the bitter water”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8:12

UDB:

¹² Then the fourth angel blew his trumpet, and God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars so that they lost their light for one third of the time. The sun did not shine during one third of the day, and the moon and stars did not shine during one third of the night.

ULB:

¹² The fourth angel sounded his trumpet, and a third of the sun was struck, as well as a third of the moon and a third of the stars. So a third of them turned dark; a third of the day and a third of the night had no light.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [light](#)

translationNotes:

- **a third of the sun was struck** - Causing something bad to happen to the sun is spoken of as striking, or hitting, it. This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “a third of the sun changed” or “God changed a third of the sun” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **a third of them turned dark** - Possible meanings are 1) “one third of the time they were dark” or 2) “one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark”
- **a third of the day and a third of the night had no light** - “there was no light during one third of the day and one third of the night” or “they did not shine during one third of the day and one third of the night”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 8:13

UDB:

¹³ As I watched, I heard an eagle that was flying high in the sky shouting in a loud voice, “Terrible things will happen to the people who live on the earth when the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them!”

ULB:

¹³ I looked, and I heard an eagle that was flying in the middle of the sky, calling out with a loud voice, “Woe, woe, woe, to those who live on the earth, because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels.”

translationWords:

- eagle
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- voice
- woe
- life, live, living, alive
- earth, earthly
- trumpet
- angel, archangel

translationNotes:

- **because of the remaining trumpet ... angels** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the seven trumpet judgments. This chapter and the previous one, together form a single unit.

Woe

There are several specific “woes” mention in the book of Revelation. This chapter contains the first of these woes. It is possible that these have some structural significance or importance to the chronology of the events of Revelation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Animal imagery

Animal imagery is common in this book as well as very common in this chapter. The people of the ancient Near East probably viewed these animals as having some “trait,” which typified the animal. For example, a lion is often seen as powerful. The translator should not try to determine the meaning of each of these images.

Bottomless pit

This is a common image in the book of Revelation to describe hell. It emphasizes that hell is inescapable. It is described as being down, in opposition to heaven which is considered up. This emphasizes that neither is on earth. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Abaddon and Apollyon

These are words in Hebrew and Greek. John does not “translate” these words but chooses to “transliterate” by substituting Greek letters for the Hebrew letters. The translators of the ULB and UDB have not translated the meaning of these words. The translator should try to form the sounds of these words without translating their meaning.

Repentance

This chapter mentions the theme of repentance. Despite these great miracles, the people are said to avoid repentance and remain in their sin. One should not lose sight of this theme when reading the book of Revelation. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Symbol

Satan is often described as a fallen angel. Since stars are symbols for angels in the book of Revelation, the phrase “a star from heaven that had fallen” probably symbolizes Satan. (See: [Satan, devil, evil one](#), [Symbolic Language](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Simile

There are many similes in this chapter. Their purpose is to describe the complex image that John sees in his vision. Therefore, it serves more of a practical rather than poetic function. (See: [Simile](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**“The people who did not have the seal of God”**

It is best to leave the meaning of this phrase unclear in translation, if possible. Many scholars believe it to be a mark made to distinguish believers from unbelievers in this time of tribulation. (See: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 09:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 9:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the fifth angel blew his trumpet, and I saw a star that had fallen from the sky to the earth. God gave it the key to the shaft that went down but had no ending. ² When he opened that shaft, smoke rose from it like smoke from a great burning furnace. The smoke prevented anyone from seeing the light of the sun and the sky.

ULB:

9 ¹ Then the fifth angel sounded his trumpet. I saw a star from heaven that had fallen to the earth. The star was given the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit. ² He opened the shaft of the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the shaft like smoke from a huge furnace. The sun and the air turned dark by the smoke pouring out of the shaft.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- trumpet
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- pit
- furnace

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The fifth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.
- **I saw a star from heaven that had fallen** - John saw the star after it had fallen. He did not watch it fall.
- **the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit** - “the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit”
- **the shaft of the bottomless pit** - Possible meanings are 1) “shaft” is another way of referring to the pit and describes it as long and narrow, or 2) “shaft” refers to the opening of the pit.
- **the bottomless pit** - This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.
- **like smoke from a huge furnace** - A huge furnace gives off a great amount of thick, dark smoke. AT: “like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace” (See: **Simile**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:3-4**UDB:**

³ Locusts also came out of the smoke onto the earth. God gave them power to sting people as scorpions sting people. ⁴ God told the locusts that they should not harm the grass of the earth or any plants or any tree. God said that they should harm only those people who did not have the mark on their foreheads to show that they belonged to God.

ULB:

³ Out of the smoke locusts came on the earth, and they were given power like that of scorpions on the earth. ⁴ They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree, but only the people who did not have the seal of God on their foreheads.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- power, powers
- seal, to seal
- God

translationNotes:

- **locusts** - insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **power like that of scorpions** - Scorpions have the ability to sting and poison other animals and people. AT: “the ability to sting people as scorpions do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **scorpions** - small insects with poisonous stingers on their tails. Their sting is extremely painful and the pain lasts a long time. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree** - Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.
- **but only the people** - The phrase “to damage” or “to harm” is understood. AT: “but only to harm the people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **the seal of God** - The word “seal” here refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God’s people. AT: “the marker of God” or “stamp of God.” See how you translated “seal” in [7:3](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **foreheads** - The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:5-6

UDB:

⁵ God did not allow the locusts to kill those people. Instead, the locusts kept torturing people for five months. The pain those people felt was like the pain that a scorpion causes when it stings someone. ⁶ During the time when the locusts torture rebellious people, the pain will be so bad that people will want to find a way to die, but they will not find any way. They will long to die, but they will not be able to die.

ULB:

⁵ They were not given permission to kill those people, but only to torture them for five months. Their agony would be like the sting of a scorpion when it strikes a person. ⁶ In those days people will seek death, but will not find it. They will greatly desire to die, but death will flee from them.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **They were not given permission** - “They” refers to the locusts. (9:03)
- **those people** - the people whom the locusts were stinging
- **but only to torture them** - Here the words “given permission” are understood. AT: “but only given permission to torture them” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **to torture them** - “to make them suffer terrible pain”
- **to torture them for five months** - The locusts would be allowed to do this for five months.
- **the sting of a scorpion** - A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.
- **people will seek death** - Death is spoken of as if it were a physical thing or person that can be hidden. AT: “people will try to find a way to die” or “people will try to kill themselves” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **will not find it** - “they will not be able to find a way to die” or “they will not be able to die”
- **will greatly desire to die** - “will want very much to die” or “will wish that they could die”
- **death will flee from them** - John speaks of death as if it were a person or animal that could run away. AT: “they will not be able to die” or “they will not die” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 09 Translation Questions

Revelation 9:7-9

UDB:

⁷ The locusts looked like horses that are ready for battle. They had on their heads what looked like golden crowns. Their faces were like the faces of people. ⁸ They had long hair like women's long hair. Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth. ⁹ They wore breastplates made of metal. When they were flying, their wings made a noise like the roar of many horses pulling chariots as they are rushing into battle.

ULB:

⁷ The locusts looked like horses prepared for war. On their heads were something like crowns of gold, and their faces were like human faces. ⁸ They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like lions' teeth. ⁹ They had breastplates like iron breastplates, and the sound of their wings was like the sound made by many chariots and horses running into battle.

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [gold](#)
- [face](#)
- [lion](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [chariot](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These locusts did not look like ordinary locusts. John describes them by telling how parts of them looked like other things.
- **crowns of gold** - These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ They had tails like tails of scorpions. With these tails they could sting people. Their power to harm people during those five months was in their tails. ¹¹ The king who ruled over them was the angel of the shaft that went down but had no ending. His name in the Hebrew language is Abaddon. In the Greek language it is Apollyon. Both of these names mean “Destroyer.”

¹² That ended the first terrible event. But be aware that two more terrible events are still to come.

ULB:

¹⁰ They had tails with stingers like scorpions; in their tails they had power to harm people for five months. ¹¹ They had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit. His name in Hebrew was Abaddon, and in Greek he had the name Apollyon.

¹² The first woe is past. Look! After this there are still two disasters to come.

translationWords:

- power, powers
- king
- angel, archangel
- pit
- name
- Hebrew
- Greek, Grecian
- woe

translationNotes:

- **They had tails** - The word “They” refers to the locusts.
- **with stingers like scorpions** - A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death. “with stingers like scorpion stingers” or “with stingers that could cause terrible pain as scorpion stingers can.” See how you translated a similar phrase in 9:6. (See: [Simile](#))
- **in their tails they had power to harm people for five months** - Possible meanings are 1) they had power for five months to harm people or 2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.
- **the bottomless pit** - This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in 9:1.

- **Abaddon ... Apollyon** - Both names mean “destruction.” (See: [How to Translate Names and Copy or Borrow Words](#))
- **there are still two disasters to come** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:13-15

UDB:

¹³ Then the sixth angel blew his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four corners of the golden altar that is in God's presence. ¹⁴ The voice was saying to the sixth angel, the one who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels whom I have bound at the great river Euphrates." ¹⁵ Then those four angels went free, those who had waited for that exact hour of that day, month, and year. They went free in order that they might enable their soldiers to kill one third of the people.

ULB:

¹³ The sixth angel sounded his trumpet, and I heard a voice coming from the horns of the golden altar that is present before God. ¹⁴ The voice said to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels who are bound at the great river Euphrates." ¹⁵ The four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of mankind.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- trumpet
- voice
- gold
- altar
- God
- bind, bond, bound
- Euphrates River

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The sixth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.
- **I heard a voice coming** - The voice refers to the one who was speaking. John does not say who the speaker was, but it may have been God. AT: "I heard someone speaking" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **horns of the golden altar** - These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the altar.
- **The voice said** - The voice refers to the speaker. AT "The speaker said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **The four angels who had been prepared for ... that year, were released** - This can be stated with an active form. AT: "The angel released the four angels who had been prepared for ... that year" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The four angels who had been prepared** - This can be stated with an active form. AT: "The four angels whom God had prepared" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **for that hour, that day, that month, and that year** - These words are used to show that there is a specific, chosen time and not just any time. AT: “for that exact time” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ The number of those soldiers riding on horses was two hundred million. I heard someone say how many there were. ¹⁷ In the vision I saw what the horses and the soldiers who rode them looked like. The soldiers wore breastplates that were red like fire, dusky blue like smoke, and yellow like sulfur. The heads of the horses were like the heads of lions. From their mouths came fire, smoke, and fumes of burning sulfur.

ULB:

¹⁶ The number of the soldiers on horseback was 200,000,000. I heard their number. ¹⁷ This is how I saw the horses in my vision and those who rode on them: Their breastplates were fiery red, dark blue and sulfurous yellow. The heads of the horses resembled the heads of lions, and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur.

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [vision](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [lion](#)
- [fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Suddenly, 200,000,000 soldiers on horseback appear in John's vision. John is no longer speaking about the four angels mentioned in the previous verse.
- **200,000,000** - Some ways to express this are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in [5:11](#). (See: [Numbers](#))
- **fiery red** - "it was red like fire" or "it was bright red." See how you translated this in [6:3](#).
- **sulfurous yellow** - "yellow like sulfur" or "bright yellow like sulfur"
- **out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur** - "fire, smoke, and sulfur came out of their mouths"

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 09 General Notes
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Those three things—the fire, the smoke, and the burning sulfur from the horses’ mouths—killed one-third of the people. ¹⁹ The power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails. Their tails had heads like snakes by which they harmed people.

ULB:

¹⁸ A third of the people were killed by these three plagues: the fire, smoke, and sulfur that came out of their mouths. ¹⁹ For the power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails—for their tails were like snakes, and they had heads with which they inflicted wounds on people.

translationWords:

- [plague](#)
- [fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [horse](#)
- [serpent, snake, viper](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues to describe the horses and the plagues brought upon humanity.
- **A third of the people** - “One third of the people.” See how you translated “A third” in [8:7](#). (See: [Fractions](#))
- **For the power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails** - The abstract noun “power” can be translated with an adjective. “For it was the horses’ mouths and tails that were so powerful” or “for it was the horses’ mouths and tails that were able to hurt people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 9:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ But the rest of the people, those who were not killed by the plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur, did not turn from the sinful things they were doing. They did not stop worshiping demons or the idols that they themselves had made of gold, of silver, of bronze, of stone, and of wood. The people did not stop worshiping them, even though they were idols that could not see, hear, or walk. ²¹ They did not stop murdering people, or practicing sorcery, or acting in sexually immoral ways, or stealing things.

ULB:

²⁰ The rest of mankind, those who were not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the deeds they had done, nor did they stop worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood—things that cannot see, hear, or walk. ²¹ Neither did they repent of their murders, their sorcery, their sexual immorality or their acts of theft.

translationWords:

- plague
- repent, repentance
- works, deeds, work, acts
- worship
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- idol, idolatrous
- gold
- silver
- bronze
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- sexual immorality

translationNotes:

- **those who were not killed by these plagues** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whom the plagues had not killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **things that cannot see, hear, or walk** - This phrase reminds us that idols are not alive and do not deserve to be worshiped. But the people did not stop worshiping them. AT: “even though idols cannot see, hear, or walk” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven thunders

It is unclear what this references, but it does seem to reference something. It is perfectly acceptable for the translator to not understand this phrase and translate it as “seven thunders.” (See: [Personification](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

“The mystery of God”

It is uncertain what this references. It is not the “mystery” Paul describes, namely the church. It probably does share the meaning of being something that is currently hidden or unknown, which will be revealed at this time. (See: [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Coming down from heaven”

Heaven is frequently said to be “up.” The reason for this is to emphasize that heaven is not located on the earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Simile

There are many different similes used to describe the mighty angel. The similes are used to try to describe what John sees by relating it to everyday things. The rainbow and cloud are probably not metaphors since the simile is not used. (See: [Simile](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Scrolls

The scroll mentioned in this chapter is different than the scrolls which have been the subject of much of the book of Revelation to this point. It is called to “little scroll” here. The translator should ensure the reader is aware that there is more than one scroll.

Links:

- [Revelation 10:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 10:1-2

UDB:

¹ In the vision I saw another mighty angel come down out of heaven. A cloud surrounded him. There was a rainbow over his head. His face shone like the sun. His legs looked like columns of fire. ² He had in his hand a small scroll that was open. He set his right foot on the ocean and his left foot on the land.

ULB:

10 ¹ Then I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven. He was robed in a cloud, and there was a rainbow above his head. His face was like the sun and his feet were like pillars of fire. ² He held a little scroll in his hand that was open, and he put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [scroll](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a vision of a mighty angel holding a scroll. In John's vision he is viewing what is happening from earth. This takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.
- **He was robed in a cloud** - John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing a cloud as his clothing. This expression may be understood as metaphor. However, because very unusual things were often seen in visions, it might be understood as a literally true statement in its context. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **His face was like the sun** - "his face was bright like the sun" (See: [Simile](#))
- **his feet were like pillars of fire** - The word "feet" refers to the legs. AT: "his legs were like pillars of fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land** - "he stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land"

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 10 General Notes
- **Revelation 10 Translation Questions**

Revelation 10:3-4

UDB:

³ He shouted something with a loud voice, a voice like the roar of a lion. When he shouted, it thundered seven times; in the thunder were words that I could understand. ⁴ I was about to write the words that I heard, but a voice from heaven said to me, “Keep secret what the thunder said! Do not write it down!”

ULB:

³ Then he shouted in a loud voice like a roaring lion. When he shouted, the seven thunders spoke out with their sounds. ⁴ When the seven thunders spoke out, I was about to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Keep secret what the seven thunders said. Do not write it down.”

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [lion](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then he shouted** - “Then the angel shouted”
- **the seven thunders spoke out** - The thunder is described as if it were a person who could speak. AT: “the seven thunders made a loud noise” or “the thunder sounded very loudly seven times”
- **seven thunders** - Thunder occurring seven times is spoken of as if it were seven different “thunders.”
- **but I heard a voice from heaven** - The word “voice” refers to the speaker. It is not the angel. AT: “but I heard someone speaking from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 10:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Then the angel whom I had seen standing on the ocean and the land raised his right hand toward heaven, ⁶ and he asked the one who lives forever—the one who created heaven and everything that is in it, who created the earth and everything that is on it, and who created the ocean and everything that is in it—to say that what he was going to say was true. The angel said that God would no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do. ⁷ He said that when the time came for the seventh angel to blow his trumpet, God’s secret plan would be finished, just as he had said long ago to his servants, the prophets.

ULB:

⁵ Then the angel I saw standing on the sea and the earth, raised his right hand to heaven. ⁶ He swore by the one who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and all that is in it, the earth and all that is on it, and the sea and all that is in it, and the angel said, ”There will be no more delay. ⁷ But on the day when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, then the mystery of God will be accomplished, just as he proclaimed to his servants the prophets.”

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- oath, swear, swear by
- life, live, living, alive
- forever
- create, creation, Creator
- mystery, hidden truth
- God
- proclaim, proclamation
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **raised his right hand to heaven** - He did this to show that he was swearing by God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **He swore by the one who lives forever and ever** - “and asked that the one who lives forever and ever would confirm it”
- **the one who lives forever and ever** - Here “the one” refers to God.
- **There will be no more delay** - “There will be no more waiting” or “God will not delay.”
- **the mystery of God will be accomplished** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will accomplish his mystery” or “God will complete his secret plan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 10:8-9

UDB:

⁸ The one whom I had heard speak from heaven spoke to me again. He said, “Go and take the open scroll from the hand of the angel who is standing on the ocean and on the land.” ⁹ So I went to the angel and asked him to give me the little scroll. He said to me, “Take it and eat it. In your mouth it will taste sweet like honey, but it will make your stomach bitter.”

ULB:

⁸ The voice I heard from heaven spoke to me again: “Go, take the open scroll that is in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land.” ⁹ Then I went to the angel and told him to give me the little scroll. He said to me, “Take the scroll and eat it. It will make your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey.”

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John hears the voice from heaven, which he had heard in [10:4](#), speak to him again.
- **The voice I heard from heaven** - The word “voice” refers to the speaker. AT: “The one I heard speak from heaven” or “The one who had spoken to me from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **I** - The word “I” here refers to John.
- **He said to me** - “The angel said to me”
- **bitter** - “sour” or “acid.” This refers to a bad taste from the stomach after eating something that is not good.
- **it will be as sweet as honey** - “It will taste as sweet as honey” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 10:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. In my mouth it tasted sweet like honey, but then it made my stomach bitter. ¹¹ Then someone said to me, "You must speak God's messages again about many nations, people groups, speakers of many languages, and many kings."

ULB:

¹⁰ I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but after I ate it, my stomach became bitter. ¹¹ Then someone said to me, "You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings."

translationWords:

- scroll
- angel, archangel
- honey, honeycomb
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- king

translationNotes:

- **languages** - This refers to the people who speak the languages. AT: "many language communities" or "many groups of people who speak their language" or "speakers of many languages" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 11:15, 17-18, which are extended quotations.

Woe

There are several specific “woes” mention in the book of Revelation. This chapter contains the second and third of these woes. It is possible these have some structural significance or importance to the chronology of the events of Revelation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Gentiles

Gentiles is used in this chapter to refer to ungodly Gentiles and not Gentile Christians. (See: [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Two witnesses

These two witnesses serve an important function as prophets during the time of Revelation. Scholars have put forth many suggestions about the identity of these two men. It is unknown and unimportant who they are. Instead, it is their indestructible nature and their message that is more significant and undeniable. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bottomless pit

This is a common image in the book of Revelation to describe hell. It emphasizes hell is inescapable. It is described as being down, in opposition to heaven which is considered up. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“These two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth”

The two prophets are connected with a great deal of destruction, which will cause great harm to the people on the earth. This is not mean-spirited, but it is an effort to bring these people to repentance. This will not happen. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

“The time has come for the dead to be judged”

People will be judged after they die. Those who reject Jesus will suffer eternal punishment, while Christian will be rewarded for the faithfulness with which they lived their lives as Christians. (See: [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 11:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 11:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then an angel gave to me a reed similar to a measuring stick. God said to me, "Go to the temple, measure it and the altar in it, and count the people who are worshiping there. ² But do not measure the courtyard outside of the temple building because I have given it to the non-Jewish people groups. As a result, they will trample the city of Jerusalem for forty-two months.

ULB:

11 ¹ A reed was given to me to use like a measuring rod. I was told, "Get up and measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it. ² But do not measure the courtyard outside the temple, for it has been given over to the Gentiles. They will trample the holy city for forty-two months.

translationWords:

- reed, reeds
- rod
- temple
- God
- altar
- worship
- courtyard, court
- Gentile
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a vision about receiving a measuring rod and two witnesses that God appointed. This vision also takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.
- **A reed was given to me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone gave me a reed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **given to me ... I was told** - The words "me" and "I" refer to John.
- **and those who worship in it** - "and count those who worship in the temple"
- **trample** - to treat something as worthless by walking on it
- **forty-two months** - "42 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:3-5

UDB:

³ I will send two witnesses to announce what I reveal to them for 1,260 days. They will show they are sad about the people's sin by wearing rough clothes made from goat's hair." ⁴ Those witnesses are the ones that are represented by the two olive trees and the two lampstands that are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth. ⁵ If anyone tries to harm those witnesses, fire comes from the witnesses' mouths and destroys them. If people want to harm them, the two witnesses certainly kill them in the same way.

ULB:

³ I will give my two witnesses authority to prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth." ⁴ These witnesses are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth. ⁵ If anyone chooses to harm them, fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies. Anyone who wishes to harm them must be killed in this way.

translationWords:

- witness, eyewitness
- authority
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- clothe, clothed
- sackcloth
- olive
- lampstand
- Lord
- earth, earthly
- fire
- devour
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - God continues speaking to John.
- **clothed in sackcloth** - Why they will wear sackcloth can be made explicit. AT: "wearing rough mourning clothes" or "they will wear scratchy clothes to show that they are very sad" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)))
- **These witnesses are** - John explains who these witness are.
- **These witnesses are the two olive trees and the two lampstands** - "These witnesses are the ones represented by the two olive trees and the two lampstands" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

- **the two olive trees and the two lampstands** - John expects his readers to know about them because many years earlier another prophet had written about them. AT: “the two olive trees and the two lampstands that scripture tells about” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)))
- **fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies** - Because this is about future events, it can also be stated in the future tense. AT: “fire will come out of their mouth and devour their enemies”
- **fire ... devours their enemies** - Fire burning and killing people is spoken of as if it were an animal that could eat them up. AT: “fire ... will destroy their enemies” or “fire ... will completely burn up their enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Those witnesses will have authority over the sky in order to keep rain from falling during the time that they are announcing what God reveals to them. They also will have authority to cause water everywhere to become blood; they will also have authority to send down to the earth all kinds of plagues. They will do this as often as they wish. ⁷ When they have finished announcing to people the message from God, the beast that comes up from the shaft that went down but had no ending will attack them, overcome them, and kill them.

ULB:

⁶ These witnesses have authority to close up the sky so that no rain will fall during the time that they prophesy. They have power to turn the waters to blood and to strike the earth with every kind of plague whenever they wish. ⁷ When they will have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up from the bottomless pit will wage war against them. He will conquer them and kill them.

translationWords:

- witness, eyewitness
- authority
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- power, powers
- turn, turn away, turn back
- water, waters
- blood
- earth, earthly
- kind, kinds
- plague
- testimony, testify
- beast
- pit

translationNotes:

- **to close up the sky so that no rain will fall** - John speaks of the sky as if it had a door that can be opened to let rain fall or closed to stop the rain. AT: “to keep rain from falling from the sky” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to strike the earth with every kind of plague** - John speaks of the plagues as if they were a stick that someone could hit the earth with. AT: “to cause all kinds of trouble to occur on earth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **bottomless pit** - This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [9:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:8-9

UDB:

⁸ The dead bodies of the two witnesses will lie in the street of the great city where their Lord was crucified, the city that is symbolically called Sodom or Egypt because its people are very evil like the people who lived in Sodom and Egypt. ⁹ Individuals of many people groups, tribes, language groups, and nations will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days. But they will not allow anyone to bury their bodies.

ULB:

⁸ Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city (which is symbolically called Sodom and Egypt) where their Lord was crucified. ⁹ For three and a half days some from every people, tribe, language, and nation will look at their bodies. They will not permit them to be placed in a tomb.

translationWords:

- Sodom
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Lord
- crucify
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- tribe
- tomb, grave, burial place

translationNotes:

- **Their bodies** - This refers to the bodies of the two witnesses.
- **in the street of the great city** - The city had more than one street. This was a public place where people could see them. AT: “in one of the streets of the great city” or “in the main street of the great city”
- **three and a half days** - “3 full days and one half day” or “3.5 days” or “3 1/2 days” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **their Lord** - They served the Lord, and like him would die in that city.
- **They will not permit them to be placed in a tomb** - This was a sign of disrespect.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ When the people who live on the earth see that the witnesses are dead, they will rejoice and celebrate. They will send gifts to each other because these two prophets had sent plagues that tormented them. ¹¹ But after three and a half days, God will cause them to breathe again and live. They will stand up, and the people who see them will be terrified. ¹² The two witnesses will hear a loud voice from heaven saying to them: “Come up here!” Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud. Their enemies will watch them go up.

ULB:

¹⁰ Those who live on the earth will rejoice over them and celebrate. They will even send gifts to one another because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth. ¹¹ But after three and a half days a breath of life from God will enter them, and they will stand on their feet. Great fear will fall on those who see them. ¹² Then they will hear a loud voice from heaven say to them, “Come up here!” Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud, while their enemies look on.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- send, send out, sent
- gift
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- torment
- breathe, breath
- life, live, living, alive
- God
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- voice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **will rejoice over them and celebrate** - “will rejoice that the two witnesses have died”
- **even send gifts to one another** - This action shows how happy the people were. (See: **Symbolic Action**)
- **because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth** - This is the reason that the people were so happy that the witnesses had died.
- **three and a half days** - “3 full days and one half day” or “3.5 days” or “3 1/2 days.” See how you translated this in **11:9**. (See: **Numbers**)

- **a breath of life from God will enter them** - The ability to breathe is spoken of as if it were something that can go into people. AT: “God will cause the two witnesses to breathe again and live” (UBS) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Great fear will fall on those who see them** - Fear is spoken of as if it is a object that can fall on people. AT: “Those who see them will be extremely afraid” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Then they will hear** - Possible meanings are 1) the two witnesses will hear or 2) the people will hear what is said to the two witnesses.
- **a loud voice from heaven** - The word “voice” refers to the one who speaks. AT: “someone speak loudly to them from heaven and” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **say to them** - “say to the two witnesses”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:13-14

UDB:

¹³ At that same time there will be a great earthquake, as a result of which a tenth of the buildings in the city will collapse, and seven thousand people will die. The rest of the people will be afraid and will acknowledge that the God who rules in heaven is awesome.

¹⁴ That will be the second terrible event. Be aware that the third terrible event will happen soon after.

ULB:

¹³ At that hour there will be a major earthquake, and a tenth part of the city will collapse. Seven thousand people will be killed in the earthquake, and the survivors will be terrified and give glory to the God of heaven.

¹⁴ The second woe is past. Look! The third woe is coming quickly.

translationWords:

- [terror, terrify](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [woe](#)

translationNotes:

- **Seven thousand people** - “7,000 people” (See [Numbers](#))
- **the survivors** - “those who do not die” or “those who are still living”
- **give glory to the God of heaven** - “say that the God of heaven is glorious”
- **The second woe is past** - “The second terrible event is over.” See how you translated “The first woe is past” in [9:12](#).
- **The third woe is coming quickly** - Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. AT: “The third woe will happen soon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:15

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the seventh angel blew his trumpet. Voices in heaven shouted loudly, “Our Lord God and the Christ whom he has appointed can now govern all the people in the world, and they will continue to rule those people forever!”

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the seventh angel sounded his trumpet, and loud voices spoke in heaven and said,
 ”The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ.
 He will reign forever and ever.”

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- trumpet
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- kingdom
- world, worldly
- Lord
- Christ, Messiah
- reign
- forever

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The last of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.
- **the seventh angel** - This is the last of the seven angels. AT: “the final angel” or “angel number seven.” See how you translated “seventh” in 8.1. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **loud voices spoke in heaven and said** - The phrase “loud voices” represents speakers who spoke loudly. AT: “Speakers in heaven spoke loudly and said”
- **The kingdom of the world** - Here this refers to the authority to rule the world. AT: “The authority to rule the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the world** - This refers to everyone in the world. AT: “everyone in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ** - The word “kingdom” here refers to the authority that our Lord and his Christ have to rule. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ** - “Our Lord and his Christ are now the rulers of the world”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The twenty-four elders who sit on their thrones in God's presence prostrated themselves and worshiped him. ¹⁷ They said:

"Lord God, you are the one who rules over everything!
 You are the one who exists now!
 You are the one who has always existed!
 We thank you that you have defeated with your power
 everyone who has rebelled against you,
 and you now rule over all the people in the world.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then the twenty-four elders who were sitting on their thrones in the presence of God prostrated themselves on their faces. They worshiped God. ¹⁷ They said,

"We give thanks to you, Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was,
 because you have taken your great power and have begun to reign. [1]Some
 copies read *the ruler over all, the one who is and who was, and who is to come*,
 but most modern versions do not.

translationWords:

- elder
- throne
- God
- worship
- Lord
- Almighty
- power, powers
- reign

translationNotes:

- **twenty-four elders** - "24 elders." See how you translated this in 4:4. (See: **Numbers**)
- **prostrated themselves on their faces** - They lay down facing the ground. See how you translated a similar expression in 4:10.

- **Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was** - These phrases can be stated as sentences.
AT: “You, Lord God, are the ruler over all. You are the one who is, and you are the one who was” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))
- **the one who is** - “the one who exists” or “the one who lives”
- **who was** - “who has always existed” or “the one who has always lived”
- **you have taken your great power** - What God did with his great power can be stated clearly.
AT: “you have defeated with your power everyone who has rebelled against you” (UBS) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ The unbelieving people of the nations were angrily raging at you.

As a result you have become very angry with them.

You have decided that this is the right time for you to judge all those who have died.

The time has come for you to reward all your servants who were the prophets and the others who believe in you,

and all those who honor you,

and this includes those who are small and those who are great.

It is time for you to destroy the people who destroy the earth.”

ULB:

¹⁸ The nations were enraged,

but your wrath has come.

The time has come for the dead to be judged

and for you to reward your servants the prophets,

those who are believers, and those who feared your name,

both the unimportant and the mighty.

And the time has come for you to destroy those who are destroying the earth.”

translationWords:

- nation
- wrath, fury
- death, die, dead
- judge, judgment
- reward
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- believer
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- name
- mighty, might

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The twenty-four elders continue praising God.
- **General Information:** - The words “you” and “your” refer to God.
- **were enraged** - “were extremely angry”
- **your wrath has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. AT: “You are ready to show your anger” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The time has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. AT: “The time is right” or “Now is the time” (See: [Metaphor](#)).
- **the prophets, those who are believers, and those who feared your name** - This list explains what “your servants” means. These were not three completely different groups of people. The prophets also were believers and feared God’s name. AT: “the prophets and the others who are believers and fear your name”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 11:19

UDB:

¹⁹ Then God opened his temple in heaven, and I saw in it the sacred chest. Lightning was flashing; it was thundering and rumbling; the earth shook, and large hail stones fell from the sky.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then God's temple in heaven was opened and the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple. There were flashes of lightning, rumblings, crashes of thunder, an earthquake, and a great hailstorm.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [hail](#)

translationNotes:

- **the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I saw the ark of his covenant in his temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **flashes of lightning** - Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [4:5](#).
- **rumblings, crashes of thunder** - These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [4:5](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 12:10-22, which are extended quotations.

Many scholars believe the events of this chapter are both future and past. The author may shift between the events without shifting the tense in which he speaks. Despite this, John speaks as if these events are about to happen.

Special concepts in this chapter

Serpent

The reference to Satan as the serpent is intended to have the reader remember the account of the temptation in the Garden of Eden. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The woman is described using many different metaphors. Her identity is unclear, but this chapter is probably about the rise of the Antichrist. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [antichrist](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“A great sign was seen in heaven”

It is unclear whether this was seen by everybody on earth or whether it was only seen by John in his vision. The translator may have difficulty when the subject is unclear. In English, this is done through the use of the passive voice, but every language does not have this construct. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 12:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 12:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then something very important appeared in the sky. It was a woman, whose clothing was the sun. The moon was under her feet. On her head was a wreath of victory that was made of twelve stars. ² She was about to deliver a child, and she cried out because she was suffering pain.

ULB:

12 ¹ A great sign was seen in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and with the moon under her feet, and a crown of twelve stars was on her head. ² She was pregnant, and she was crying out in birth pains, in the anguish of childbirth.

translationWords:

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [labor pains, in labor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a woman who appears in his vision.
- **A great sign was seen in heaven** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "A great sign appeared in heaven" or "I, John, saw a great sign in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a woman clothed with the sun** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "a woman who was wearing the sun" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a crown of twelve stars** - This was apparently a likeness of a wreath made of laurel leaves or olive branches, but with twelve stars included in it.
- **twelve stars** - "12 stars" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:3-4

UDB:

³ Something else very unusual appeared in the sky. It was a huge red dragon. It had seven heads and ten horns. On each of its heads was a royal crown. ⁴ The dragon's tail dragged a third of the stars from the sky and threw them to the earth. The dragon set himself in front of the woman who was about to give birth in order that he might eat her child as soon as it was born.

ULB:

³ Then another sign was seen in heaven: Look! There was a huge red dragon that had seven heads and ten horns, and there were seven crowns on his heads. ⁴ His tail swept away a third of the stars in heaven and hurled them down to the earth. The dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth, he would devour her child.

translationWords:

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [horn, horns](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [devour](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John describes a dragon that appears in his vision.
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **His tail swept away a third of the stars** - "With his tail he swept away a third of the stars"
- **a third** - "One third." See how you translated this in [8:7](#). (See: [Fractions](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then she gave birth to a son who is destined to rule all the people-groups with complete authority as if he were using an iron rod. God snatched away her child and took him to his throne. ⁶ But the woman fled into the wilderness. She has a place there that God has prepared for her in order that he may take care of her for 1,260 days.

ULB:

⁵ She gave birth to a son, a male child, who would rule all the nations with an iron rod. Her child was snatched away to God and to his throne, ⁶ and the woman fled into the wilderness, where God had prepared a place for her, so she could be taken care of for 1,260 days.

translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [nation](#)
- [rod](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

translationNotes:

- **rule all the nations with an iron rod** - Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2:27](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Her child was snatched away to God** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God quickly took her child to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Then there was a battle in heaven. Michael and the angels that he commanded fought against the dragon. The dragon and his angels fought back against Michael and his angels. ⁸ But the dragon did not win the battle; nor did God allow the dragon and his angels to stay in heaven any longer. ⁹ Instead, God threw the huge dragon out of heaven. The dragon is the ancient serpent, the one whose names are the Devil and Satan. He is the one who deceives people all over the earth. He was thrown to the earth along with all his angels.

ULB:

⁷ Now there was war in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought back. ⁸ But the dragon was not strong enough to win. So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels. ⁹ The great dragon—that old serpent called the devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world—was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Michael
- angel, archangel
- serpent, snake, viper
- Satan, devil, evil one
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- world, worldly

translationNotes:

- **Now** - John uses this word to mark a shift in his account to introduce something else happening in his vision.
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in 12:3. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels** - “So the dragon and his angels could no longer stay in heaven”
- **The great dragon ... was thrown down to the earth ... and his angels were thrown down with him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God threw the great dragon and his angels out of heaven and sent them to the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **that old serpent called the devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world** - This information can be given in separate sentences after the information about it being thrown down to the earth. AT: “That dragon is the old serpent who deceives the world. He is called the devil or Satan” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then I heard someone in heaven shout loudly,

”Now our God has saved his people by his power, and he rules all people!

Now Christ has begun to rule!

This is because God has thrown the accuser of our fellow believers out of heaven.

He was the one who stood before God day and night and told him that they had done what is wrong.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then I heard a loud voice in heaven:

”Now have come the salvation, the power,

the kingdom of our God,

and the authority of his Christ.

For the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down,

the one who accused them before our God day and night.

translationWords:

- voice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- salvation
- power, powers
- kingdom
- God
- authority
- Christ, Messiah
- accuse, accusation, accuser
- brother

translationNotes:

- I - The word “I” refers to John.
- **I heard a loud voice in heaven** - The word “voice” refers to someone who speaks. AT: “I heard someone saying loudly from heaven” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **Now have come the salvation, the power** - God saving people by his power is spoken of as if his salvation and power were things that could come. AT: “Now God has saved his people by his power” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **come** - “begun to really exist” or “appeared” or “become real.” It is not that these things did not exist before, but now God is revealing them because their time to occur has “come.”
- **the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ** - God’s ruling and Christ’s authority are spoken of as if they were coming. AT: “God rules as king, and his Christ has all authority” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down** - This is the dragon that was thrown down in [12:9](#) .
- **our brothers** - Fellow believers are spoken of as if they were brothers. AT: “our fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **day and night** - These two parts of the day are used together to mean “all the time” or “without stopping” (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Our fellow believers overcame him because the Lamb had shed his blood and died for them
and because they spoke the truth about him to other people.

They did not seek to remain alive,
but were willing to let people kill them for speaking the truth about him.

¹² So everyone in heaven should rejoice.

But terrible things will happen to you people who live on the earth and on
the ocean because the devil has come down to you.

He is very angry because he knows that he has only a short time before God
judges and punishes him.”

ULB:

¹¹ They conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their
testimony,

for they did not love their lives even to death.

¹² Therefore, rejoice, you heavens,
and all who reside in them.

But woe to the earth and to the sea

because the devil has gone down to you.

He is filled with terrible anger,

because he knows he only has a little time.

translationWords:

- blood
- lamb, Lamb of God
- word
- testimony, testify
- love
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- rejoice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- woe

- earth, earthly
- Satan, devil, evil one
- angry, anger
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The loud voice from heaven continues to speak.
- **They conquered him** - “They conquered the accuser”
- **by the blood of the Lamb** - The blood refers to his death. AT: “because the lamb had shed his blood and died for them” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **by the word of their testimony** - The word “testimony” can be expressed with the verb “testify.” Also who they testified about can be stated clearly. AT: “by what they said when they testified to others about Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **even to death** - The believers told the truth about Jesus, even though they knew that their enemies might try to kill them because of it. AT: “but they kept testifying even though they knew that they might die for it”
- **He is filled with terrible anger** - The devil is spoken of as if he were a container, and anger is spoken of as if it were a liquid that could be in him. AT: “He is terribly angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:13-14

UDB:

¹³ When the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to a son. ¹⁴ But God gave to the woman two wings like the wings of a very large eagle in order that she might fly into the wilderness. There is a place there that God had prepared for her. There God took care of her for three and one-half years. The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there.

ULB:

¹³ When the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child. ¹⁴ But the woman was given the two wings of a great eagle, so that she would flee to the place prepared for her in the wilderness. This was the place where she would be taken care of, for a time, times, and half a time—out of the serpent's presence.

translationWords:

- [earth, earthly](#)
- [eagle](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [serpent, snake, viper](#)

translationNotes:

- **the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the dragon realized that God had thrown him out of heaven and sent him to earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he pursued the woman** - “he chased after the woman”
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **time, times, and half a time** - “three and half years”
- **the serpent** - This is another way of referring to the dragon.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 12:15-18

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the serpent poured water like a river from his mouth toward the woman in order to sweep her away with the water. ¹⁶ But the ground helped the woman by opening up and swallowing the river that the dragon poured out from his mouth. ¹⁷ Then the dragon was very angry with the woman, so he went away to fight against the rest of her descendants. They are the people who obey God's commandments and who speak the truth about Jesus. ¹⁸ Then the dragon stood on the ocean shore.

ULB:

¹⁵ The serpent poured water out of his mouth like a river, that he would make a flood to sweep her away. ¹⁶ But the earth helped the woman. The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth. ¹⁷ Then the dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to wage war with the rest of her descendants, those who obey God's commandments and hold to the testimony about Jesus. ¹⁸ Then the dragon stood on the sand of the seashore.

translationWords:

- serpent, snake, viper
- water, waters
- flood
- earth, earthly
- descendant, descended from
- obey, obedient, obedience
- God
- command, to command, commandment
- testimony, testify
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **serpent** - This is the same being as the dragon mentioned earlier in [12:9](#).
- **like a river** - The water flowed from his mouth like a river flows. AT: "in large volume" (See: [Simile](#))
- **to sweep her away** - "to wash her away"
- **The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth** - The earth is spoken of as if it were a living thing, and a hole in the earth is spoken of as if it were a mouth that could drink up the water. AT: "A hole in the ground opened up and the water went down into the hole" (See: [Personification](#))

- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **hold to the testimony about Jesus** - The word “testimony” can be translated as a verb. AT: “continue to testify about Jesus”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 13:10, which are extended quotations.

Special concepts in this chapter

A lethal wound

Many scholars believe this is a prophecy about the death of the antichrist. They believe the antichrist will mimic or counterfeit the resurrection of Jesus. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [antichrist](#) and [resurrection](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The beast

Many scholars believe this is a metaphorical way to refer to the antichrist. This is very significant for proper understanding of this passage. This is used on contrast to the lamb, which is a reference to Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#), [Personification](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Another beast

Many scholars believe this second beast is a prophet or priest of the antichrist. He is capable of performing many wondrous miracles and gets many people to worship the antichrist.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Unknown animals

This chapter uses a great number of unknown animals. Many of these animals are used in a symbolic way but their meaning is imprecise. This will cause great difficulties for translators. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 13:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 13:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I saw a beast come up out of the ocean. It had ten horns and seven heads. On each of its horns there was a royal crown. On each of its heads there was a name that insulted God. ² This beast was like a leopard. But its feet were like the feet of a bear, and its mouth was like the mouth of a lion. The dragon made the beast very powerful. He gave him the authority to rule over people as king.

ULB:

13 ¹ Then I saw a beast coming up out of the sea. It had ten horns and seven heads. On its horns were ten crowns, and on each of its heads was a blasphemous name. ² This beast I saw was like a leopard. Its feet were like a bear's feet, and its mouth was like a lion's mouth. The dragon gave his power to it, and his throne, and his great authority to rule.

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **horn, horns**
- **crown, to crown**
- **blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous**
- **leopard**
- **bear**
- **lion**
- **throne**
- **authority**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a beast who appears in his vision. The word "I" here refers to John.
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **The dragon gave his power to it** - The dragon made the beast as powerful as he was. He did not lose his power, however, by giving it to the beast.
- **his power ... his throne, and his great authority to rule** - These are three ways of referring to his authority, and together they emphasize that the authority was great.
- **his throne** - The word "throne" here refers to the dragon's authority to rule as king. AT: "his royal authority" or "his authority to rule as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:3-4

UDB:

³ One of the heads of the beast looked as if someone had wounded it so that it died. But its wound had healed. As a result, all the people of the earth marveled at the beast and followed it. ⁴ They also worshiped the dragon because he had given the beast authority to rule over them. They also worshiped the beast and said, “No one is as powerful as the beast! Who could ever fight against it?”

ULB:

³ One of the beast’s heads appeared to have been killed, but its fatal wound was healed. And the whole earth marveled as they followed the beast. ⁴ They also worshiped the dragon, for he had given his authority to the beast. They worshiped the beast, too, and kept saying, “Who is like the beast?” and “Who can fight against it?”

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **heal, cure**
- **marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished**
- **worship**
- **authority**

translationNotes:

- **but its fatal wound was healed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “But that wound healed” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **fatal wound** - “deadly wound.” This is an injury that is serious enough to cause a person to die.
- **the whole earth** - The word “earth” refers to the people on it. AT: “all the people on the earth” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **followed the beast** - “obeyed the beast”
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in **12:3**. (See: **Symbolic Language**)
- **he had given his authority to the beast** - “he had caused the beast to have as much authority as he had”
- **Who is like the beast?** - This question shows how amazed they were about the beast. AT: “No one is as powerful as the beast!” (ULB) (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Who can fight against it?** - This question shows how much the people feared the power of the beast. AT: “No one could ever fight against the beast and win!” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:5-6

UDB:

⁵ God allowed the beast to speak proudly and to insult him. God also allowed it to rule the people for forty-two months. ⁶ When it spoke, it insulted God, his name, the place where he lives, and all who live in heaven.

ULB:

⁵ The beast was given a mouth that could speak proud words and blasphemies. It was permitted to exercise authority for forty-two months. ⁶ So the beast opened its mouth to speak blasphemies against God: blaspheming his name, the place where he lives, and those who live in heaven.

translationWords:

- [beast](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [authority](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous](#)
- [name](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **The beast was given ... It was permitted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God gave the beast ... God permitted the beast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The beast was given a mouth that could speak proud words and blasphemies** - Being given a mouth refers to being allowed to speak. AT: “The beast was allowed to speak proud words and blasphemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **forty-two months** - “42 months” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **to speak blasphemies against God** - “to say disrespectful things about God”
- **blaspheming his name, the place where he lives, and those who live in heaven** - These phrases tell how the beast spoke blasphemies against God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:7-8

UDB:

⁷ God also allowed the beast to fight against his people and conquer them. It had authority to rule over every tribe, over every nation, over the speakers of every language, and over every people-group. ⁸ All the people living on earth will worship it. They are the people whose names are not in the Book of Life that belongs to the Lamb who had been killed. These are the names of the people that he wrote in the book before God created the world, the names of those who belong to God.

ULB:

⁷ The beast was permitted to wage war with the believers and to conquer them. Also, authority was given to it over every tribe, people, language, and nation. ⁸ All who live on the earth will worship it, everyone whose name was not written, since the creation of the world, in The Book of Life, which belongs to the Lamb, who had been slaughtered.

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **believer**
- **authority**
- **tribe**
- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **nation**
- **worship**
- **create, creation, Creator**
- **Book of Life**
- **lamb, Lamb of God**
- **slaughter**

translationNotes:

- **authority was given to it** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God gave authority to the beast” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **every tribe, people, language, and nation** - This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in **5:9**.
- **will worship it** - “will worship the beast”
- **everyone whose name was not written ... in The Book of Life** - This phrase clarifies who on the earth will worship the beast. It can be stated in active form. AT: “those whose names the Lamb did not write ... in The Book of Life” or “those whose names were not ... in The Book of Life” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **since the creation of the world** - “when God created the world”
- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in 5:6. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **who had been slaughtered** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom the people slaughtered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God. ¹⁰ If God has decided that some people will be captured by their enemies, they will be captured. If God has decided that some people will die in war, they will die in war. So God's people must endure suffering and be faithful to him.

ULB:

⁹ If anyone has an ear, let him listen.

¹⁰ If anyone is to be taken into captivity,
into captivity he will go.

If anyone is to be killed with a sword,
with a sword he will be killed.

Here is a call for patient endurance and faith for those who are holy.

translationWords:

- captive, captivity
- sword
- call, calling, called, call out
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance
- faith
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses are a break from John's account of his vision. Here he give a warning to the people reading his account.
- **If anyone has an ear** - Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing, listen." See how you translated a similar phrase in 2:7. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **If anyone is to be taken** - This expression means that it has been decided that someone should be taken. If needed, translators may state clearly who decided it. AT: "If God has decided that someone should be taken" or "If it is God's will that someone should be taken" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **If anyone is to be taken into captivity** - This can be stated in active form. The noun “captivity” can be stated with the verb “capture.” AT: “If it is God’s will for the enemy to capture a certain person” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **into captivity he will go** - The noun “captivity” can be stated with the verb “capture.” AT: “he will be captured” or “the enemy will capture him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **If anyone is to be killed with a sword** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “If it is God’s will for the enemy to kill a certain person with a sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **with a sword** - A sword represents war. AT: “in war” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he will be killed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the enemy will kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Here is a call for patient endurance and faith for those who are holy** - “Those who are holy must endure patiently and be faithful”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then I saw another beast come up from the earth. It had two small horns on its head as a sheep has. But it spoke harshly as a dragon does. ¹² It rules people with power in order to do what the first beast wants. It forces the people who live on the earth to worship the first beast, that is, the beast that almost died but whose wound was healed.

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. It had two horns like a lamb, and it spoke like a dragon. ¹² It exercised all the authority of the first beast in its presence, and it made the earth and those who live on it worship the first beast—the one whose lethal wound had been healed.

translationWords:

- [beast](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [horn, horns](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [authority](#)
- [worship](#)
- [heal, cure](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John begins to describe another beast who appears in his vision.
- **it spoke like a dragon** - Harsh speech is spoken of as if it were the roar of a dragon. AT: “it spoke harshly like a dragon speaks” (See: [Simile](#))
- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the earth and those who live on it worship** - “everyone on the earth”
- **the one whose lethal wound had been healed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the one who had a lethal wound that healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **lethal wound** - “deadly wound.” This was an injury that was serious enough that it could have made him die.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 13 General Notes
- **Revelation 13 Translation Questions**

Revelation 13:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The second beast also did awesome miracles, even causing fire from the sky to fall to earth while people watched. ¹⁴ He did these miracles on behalf of the first beast. By doing that, he deceived the people on the earth so that they thought they should worship the first beast. But this happened only because God allowed it to happen. The second beast told the people living on earth to make an idol to represent the first beast, the one that was alive, even though someone had killed him with a sword.

ULB:

¹³ It performed mighty miracles. It even made fire come down on the earth from heaven in front of people. ¹⁴ By the signs it was permitted to do, it deceived those who lived on the earth. It told them to make an image in honor of the beast that had the sword wound but lived.

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [miracle, wonder, sign](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [beast](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **It performed** - “The beast from the earth performed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ God allowed the second beast to breathe life into that idol in order that the idol might speak. And the beast commanded that whoever refused to worship the idol should be killed. ¹⁶ The second beast also required that people should write the first beast's name on the right hand or on the forehead of everyone, whether these were important people or unimportant people, rich or poor, free or slave. Everyone! ¹⁷ The second beast required this so that people could not buy anything or sell anything if they did not have the mark, that is, the name of the beast or the number representing its name.

ULB:

¹⁵ It was permitted to give breath to the beast's image so that the image would even speak and cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed. ¹⁶ It also forced everyone, unimportant and mighty, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on the right hand or on the forehead. ¹⁷ It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast, that is, the number representing its name.

translationWords:

- breathe, breath
- beast
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- worship
- mighty, might
- free, freedom, liberty
- servant, slave, slavery
- name

translationNotes:

- **It was permitted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God permitted the beast from the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to give breath to the beast's image** - Here the word "breath" represents life. AT: "to give life to the image" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the beast's image** - This is the image of the first beast that had been mentioned.
- **cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed** - "put to death anyone who refused to worship the first beast"
- **It also forced everyone** - "The beast from the earth also forced everyone"

- **It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast** - “people could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast.” The implicit information that the beast from the earth commanded it can be stated clearly. AT: “He commanded that people could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the mark of the beast** - This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 13:18

UDB:

¹⁸ You must think wisely to understand the meaning of the mark. Anyone who thinks wisely should understand that the number represents mankind. It is 666.

ULB:

¹⁸ This calls for wisdom. If anyone has insight, let him calculate the number of the beast. For it is the number of a human being. Its number is 666.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [beast](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This verse is a break from John's account of his vision. Here he gives another warning to the people reading his account.
- **This calls for wisdom** - "Wisdom is needed" or "You need to be wise about this"
- **If anyone has insight** - The word "insight" can be translated with the verb "understand". AT: "If anyone is able to understand things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **let him calculate the number of the beast** - "he should discern what the number of the beast means" or "he should figure out what the number of the beast means"
- **is the number of a human being** - Possible meanings are 1) the number represents one person or 2) the number represents all of humanity.
- **666** - "six hundred sixty-six" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Victorious over the beast”

This is victory in the spiritual battles occurring during this time. While most spiritual battles cannot be seen, the book of Revelation pictures a time of great spiritual battles openly occurring. (See: [spirit, spiritual](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Mark of the beast

John has spent some time discussing the mark given by the beast. Many scholars believe this chapter teaches those who receive this mark will face eternal punishment in hell. (See: [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#) and [hell, lake of fire](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Harvest

This is a common image used in scripture. The harvest illustrates a time when good things come to fruition. It is commonly used to refer to people coming to faith in Jesus, but this is not how John uses it here. It is used to describe the culmination of God’s plans. (See: [faith](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 14:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 14:1-2

UDB:

¹ But then I saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion in Jerusalem. With him were 144,000 people. His name and his Father's name had been written on their foreheads. ² I heard a sound from heaven, which was as loud as the sound of a huge waterfall or mighty thunder. It also sounded like many people playing on harps.

ULB:

14 ¹ I looked and saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion. With him were 144,000 who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads. ² I heard a voice from heaven sounding like a roar of many waters and loud thunder. The sound I heard was also like harpists playing their harps.

translationWords:

- lamb, Lamb of God
- Zion, Mount Zion
- name
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- voice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- water, waters
- harp

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John begins to describe the next part of his vision. There are 144,000 believers standing before the Lamb.
- **General Information:** - The word "I" refers to John.
- **Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in 5:6. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **144,000** - "one hundred forty-four thousand." See how you translated this in 7:4. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "on whose foreheads the Lamb and his Father had written their names" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his Father** - This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **a voice from heaven** - "a sound from heaven" (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:3-5

UDB:

³ The 144,000 people were singing a new song while they stood in front of the throne, in front of the four living creatures, and in front of the elders. Only the 144,000 people, the ones whom the Lamb had redeemed from among the people on the earth, could learn that song. No one else could learn that song. ⁴ Those 144,000 are the ones who did not corrupt themselves with women; for they never had sexual relations. They are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These are the ones whom the Lamb had redeemed for God from among the people of earth; they are the ones whom the Lamb had first offered to God and to himself. ⁵ These people never lied when they spoke, and they never acted immorally.

ULB:

³ They sang a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders. No one could learn the song except for the 144,000 who had been bought from the earth. ⁴ These are the ones that have not defiled themselves with women, for they have kept themselves sexually pure. It is these who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These were bought out of mankind as firstfruits for God and for the Lamb. ⁵ No lie was found in their mouth; they are blameless.[1]Some older copies add, *before the throne of God*

translationWords:

- throne
- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- elder
- defile, be defiled
- pure, purify, purification
- lamb, Lamb of God
- firstfruits
- God
- blameless

translationNotes:

- **They sang a new song** - "The 144,000 people sang a new song." This explains what the sound was that John heard. AT: "That sound was a new song that they sang"
- **the four living creatures** - "living being" or "living thing." See how you translated "living creature" in 4:6

- **elders** - This refers to the twenty-four elders around the throne. See how you translated “elders” in [4:4](#).
- **have not defiled themselves with women** - Possible meanings are 1) “have never had immoral sexual relations with a woman” or 2) “have never had sexual relations with a woman.” Defiling oneself with women may be a symbol of worshiping idols.
- **they have kept themselves sexually pure** - Possible meanings are 1) “they did not have sexual relations with a woman who was not their wife” or 2) “they are virgins.”
- **follow the Lamb wherever he goes** - Doing what the Lamb does is spoken of as following him. AT: “they do whatever the Lamb does” or “they obey the Lamb” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **No lie was found in their mouth** - Their “mouth” refers to what they said.” AT: “They never lied when they spoke” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then I saw another angel flying between the sky and heaven. He was bringing God's eternal good news to earth in order that he might proclaim it to people who live on the earth. He will proclaim it to every nation, to every tribe, to speakers of every language, and to every people group. ⁷ He said in a loud voice, "Honor God and praise him because it is now time for him to judge everyone! Worship him because he is the one who created the heaven, the earth, the ocean, and the springs of water."

ULB:

⁶ I saw another angel flying in midair, who had the eternal message of good news to proclaim to those who live on the earth—to every nation, tribe, language, and people. ⁷ He called out with a loud voice, "Fear God and give him glory. For the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him, the one who made the heaven, the earth, the sea, and the springs of water."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- good news, gospel
- proclaim, proclamation
- nation
- tribe
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- glory, glorious
- judge, judgment
- worship

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This is the first of three angels who proclaim judgment on the earth.
- **every nation, tribe, language, and people** - This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in [5:9](#).
- **the hour of his judgment has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#)). The idea of "judgment" can be expressed with a verb. AT: "it is now the time for God to judge people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:8

UDB:

⁸ Another angel, a second one, came after him saying, “The very evil city of Babylon is now completely destroyed! Babylon made people of all the nations engage with her in the passion of sexual immorality. Babylon is like someone who gives another person too much wine to drink!”

ULB:

⁸ Another angel—a second angel—followed saying, “Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great, who persuaded all the nations to drink the wine of her immoral passion.”

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

translationNotes:

- **Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great** - The angel speaks of Babylon being destroyed as if it had fallen. AT: “Babylon the great has been destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Babylon the great** - “Babylon the large city” or “the important city of Babylon.” This was probably a symbol for the city of Rome, which was large, wealthy, and sinful. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **who persuaded** - Babylon is spoken of as if it were a person, instead of a city filled with people. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to drink the wine of her immoral passion** - This is a symbol for participating in her sexually immoral passion. AT: “to be sexually immoral like her” or “to get drunk like her in sexual sin” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **her immoral passion** - Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Another angel, a third one, came afterward, saying in a loud voice, "If people worship the beast and its image or allow its mark to be put on their foreheads or on their hands, ¹⁰ God will be angry with them and his anger will be like strong wine that he will make them drink. He will torment them in burning sulfur in the presence of his holy angels and in the presence of the Lamb.

ULB:

⁹ Another angel—a third angel— followed them, saying with a loud voice, "If anyone worships the beast and his image, and receives a mark on his forehead or on his hand, ¹⁰ he will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath, the wine that has been poured undiluted into the cup of his anger. The person who drinks it will be tormented with fire and sulfur before God's holy angels and before the Lamb.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- voice
- worship
- beast
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- wrath, fury
- angry, anger
- torment
- fire
- sulfur
- holy, holiness
- lamb, Lamb of God

translationNotes:

- **with a loud voice** - "loudly"
- **will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath** - Drinking the wine of God's wrath is a symbol for being punished by God. AT: "will also drink some of the wine that represents God's wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **that has been poured undiluted** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "that God has mixed full strength" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **that has been poured undiluted** - This means that the wine is mixed only with different wines, and no water is mixed into it. It is strong, and a person who drinks much of it will get very drunk. As a symbol, it means that God will be extremely angry, not just a little angry. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **cup of his anger** - This symbolic cup holds the wine that represents God's anger. AT: "the cup that holds the wine that represents God's anger" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **God's holy angels** - "God's holy angels"

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ The smoke from the fire that torments them will rise forever. God will torment them continually, day and night. This is what will happen to the people who worship the beast and its image or who allow its name to be written on them.” ¹² So God’s people, those who obey what God commands and who trust in Jesus, must faithfully continue obeying and trusting him.

ULB:

¹¹ The smoke from their torment goes up forever and ever, and they have no rest day or night—these worshipers of the beast and his image, and everyone who receives the mark of his name. ¹² Here is a call for the patient endurance of those who are holy, those who obey the commandments of God and faith in Jesus.”

translationWords:

- torment
- forever
- rest
- worship
- beast
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- name
- call, calling, called, call out
- patient, patience
- endure, endurance
- holy, holiness
- obey, obedient, obedience
- command, to command, commandment
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The third angel continues to speak.
- **The smoke from their torment** - The phrase “their torment” refers to the fire that torments them. AT: “The smoke from the fire that torments them” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **they have no rest** - “they have no relief” or “the torment does not stop”
- **day or night** - These two parts of the day are used to refer to all of the time. AT: “ever” (See: **Merism**)

- **Here is a call for the patient endurance of those who are holy** - “Those who are holy must endure patiently and be faithful.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [13:10](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:13

UDB:

¹³ Then I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Write this: How fortunate from now on are those who die in union with the Lord.” God’s Spirit says, “Yes, after they die, they will no longer have to endure suffering. Instead, they will rest, and everyone will know the good things that they have done.”

ULB:

¹³ I heard a voice from heaven say, “Write this: Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord.” “Yes,” says the Spirit, “so that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds will follow them.”

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [rest](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **the dead who die** - “those who die”
- **who die in the Lord** - “who are united to the Lord and die.” This may refer to people who are killed by their enemies. AT: “who die because they are united to the Lord”
- **labors** - difficulties and sufferings
- **their deeds will follow them** - These deeds are spoken of as if they were alive and able to follow those who did them. Possible meanings are 1)“others will know the good deeds these people have done” or 2)“God will reward them for their deeds.” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ Then I saw another surprising thing. It was a white cloud, and on the cloud someone was sitting who looked like the Son of Man. He was wearing a golden crown on his head. In his hand he held a sharp sickle. ¹⁵ Still another angel came out of the temple in heaven. In a loud voice, he said to the one who was sitting on the cloud, “The time has come to reap the grain on the earth, so with your sickle reap the grain because the grain is ripe.” ¹⁶ Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and he harvested the earth.

ULB:

¹⁴ I looked, and there was a white cloud. Seated on the cloud was one like a son of man. He had a golden crown on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand. ¹⁵ Then another angel came out of the temple and called with a loud voice to the one sitting on the cloud: “Take your sickle and start to reap. For the time to reap has come, since the harvest of the earth is ripe.” ¹⁶ Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested.

translationWords:

- Son of Man, son of man
- gold
- crown, to crown
- angel, archangel
- temple
- voice
- reap, reaper
- time
- harvest

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This part is about the Son of Man harvesting the earth. Harvesting the grain is a symbol of God’s judging people. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **one like a son of man** - This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human. See how you translated this in [1:13](#). (See: [Simile](#))
- **golden crown** - This was the likeness of a wreath of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

- **sickle** - a tool with a curved blade used for cutting grass, grain, and vines (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **came out of the temple** - “came out of the heavenly temple”
- **the time to reap has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the earth was harvested** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “he harvested the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Another angel came out of the sanctuary in heaven. He also held a sharp sickle. ¹⁸ From the altar came still another angel. He is the one who takes care of the fire of the altar. He said in a loud voice to the angel who held the sickle, “With your sickle cut off the clusters of grapes in the vineyards on the earth! Then gather the clusters of grapes together because its grapes are ripe!”

ULB:

¹⁷ Another angel came out from the temple in heaven; he also had a sharp sickle. ¹⁸ Still another angel came out from the incense altar, who had authority over the fire. He called out with a loud voice to the one who had the sharp sickle, “Take your sharp sickle and gather in the clusters of grapes from the vines of the earth, for their grapes are now ripe.”

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [temple](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar](#)
- [authority](#)
- [fire](#)
- [voice](#)
- [grape](#)
- [vine](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues describing his vision about the earth being harvested.
- **who had authority over the fire** - Here “authority over” refers to responsibility to tend the fire.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 14:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ So the angel swung his sickle on the earth. Then he threw the grapes into the huge place where God will angrily punish. ²⁰ God trampled the grapes in the winepress outside the city, and blood came out! The blood flowed in a stream so deep that it reached up to the bridles of the horses and extended for three hundred kilometers.

ULB:

¹⁹ The angel swung his sickle to the earth and gathered the grape harvest of the earth. He threw it into the great wine vat of God's wrath. ²⁰ The winepress was stomped outside the city, and blood poured out from it up to the height of a horse's bridle, for 1,600 stadia.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [grape](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [winepress](#)
- [horse](#)

translationNotes:

- **great wine vat ... winepress** - These refer to the same container.
- **the great wine vat of God's wrath** - "the large wine vat where God will show his wrath"
- **bridle** - a device made of leather straps that goes around a horse's head and is used for directing the horse
- **1,600 stadia** - "300 kilometers" or "200 miles" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 15:3-4, which is a quotation of the song the angels were singing.

The events and pictures described in this chapter occur in heaven.

Special concepts in this chapter

“The most holy place, in which was the tent of witness, was open in heaven”

This statement has led some scholars to believe the Jewish temple reflected a scene in heaven. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Songs

Heaven is often described as a place where people sing. These are songs of worship to God. This illustrates that heaven is place where God is continually worshiped.

Links:

- [Revelation 15:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 15:1

UDB:

¹ Something else very unusual appeared in the sky. I saw seven angels, whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways. This is the last time that God will punish people this way, for it will fully show how angry he is.

ULB:

15 ¹ Then I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvelous: There were seven angels with seven plagues, which are the final plagues, for with them the wrath of God will be completed.

translationWords:

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [plague](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This verse is a summary of what will happen in 15:6-16:21.
- **great and marvelous** - These words have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. AT: “something that greatly amazed me” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **seven angels with seven plagues** - “seven angels who had authority to send seven plagues on the earth”
- **which are the final plagues** - “and after them, there will not be any more plagues”
- **for with them the wrath of God will be completed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “for these plagues will complete the wrath of God.” Possible meanings are 1) these plagues will show all of God’s anger or 2) after these plagues, God will no longer be angry. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 15:2

UDB:

² I saw what looked like an ocean that looked as though it was made of glass and mixed with fire. I also saw the people who had overcome the beast by not worshiping it or its image, and by not allowing its servant to mark them with the number that represents the beast's name. They were standing by the ocean that looked as though it was made of glass. They were holding the harps that God gave them.

ULB:

² I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire. Standing beside the sea were those who had been victorious over the beast and his image, and over the number representing his name. They were holding harps given to them by God.

translationWords:

- fire
- beast
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- name
- harp
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Here John begins to describe his vision of the people who had been victorious over the beast and who are praising God.
- **sea of glass** - How it was like glass or a sea can be stated clearly. Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. AT: "a sea that was as smooth as glass" or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. AT: "glass that was spread out like a sea." See how you translated this in 4:6 (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who had been victorious over the beast and his image** - How they were victorious can be stated clearly. AT: "who had been victorious over the beast and his image by not worshiping them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **over the number representing his name** - How they were victorious over the number can be stated clearly. AT: "over the number representing his name by not being marked with that number" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the number representing his name** - This refers to the number described in 13:18.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 15:3-4**UDB:**

³ They were singing a song like God's servant Moses sang long ago. They sang this to praise the Lamb in this way:

"Lord God, who rules over everything,
whatever you do is powerful and marvelous!
You always act righteously and truthfully.
You are king forever of all the people-groups!

⁴ O Lord, everyone will fear you and honor you because you alone are holy.
All people-groups will come and bow down before you
because you have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way."

ULB:

³ They were singing the song of Moses, the servant of God, the song of the Lamb:

"Great and marvelous are your deeds,
Lord God, the Almighty.
Just and true are your ways,
King of the nations.

⁴ Who will not fear you, Lord,
and glorify your name?
For you alone are holy.
All nations will come
and worship before you
because your righteous deeds have been revealed."

translationWords:

- Moses
- servant, slave, slavery
- lamb, Lamb of God
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished
- works, deeds, work, acts
- Lord

- Almighty
- just, justice, justly
- true, truth, come true
- king
- nation
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- glorify
- name
- holy, holiness
- worship
- righteous, righteousness
- reveal, revelation

translationNotes:

- **They were singing** - “Those who had been victorious over the beast were singing”
- **Who will not fear you, Lord, and glorify your name?** - This question is used to show their amazement at how great and glorious the Lord is. It can be expressed as an exclamation. AT: “Lord, everyone will fear you and glorify your name!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **and glorify your name** - The phrase “your name” refers to God. AT: “and glorify you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **your righteous deeds have been revealed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you have made everyone know about your righteous deeds” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 15:5-6

UDB:

⁵ After this I saw that the temple in heaven was open, where the sacred tent was. ⁶ The seven angels whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways came out of the very holy place. The angels were dressed in clean, white linen garments; they wore gold bands around their chests.

ULB:

⁵ After these things I looked, and the temple having the tent of witness was open in heaven. ⁶ Out of the most holy place came the seven angels holding the seven plagues. They were clothed with pure, bright linen and had golden sashes around their chests.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [plague](#)
- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The seven angels with the seven plagues come out of the most holy place. They were spoken of previously in [15:1](#).
- **After these things** - “After the people finished singing”
- **the seven angels holding the seven plagues** - These angels were seen as holding seven plagues because in [17:7](#) they are given seven bowls full of the wrath of God.
- **linen** - a fine, expensive cloth made from flax
- **sashes** - A sash is a decorative piece of cloth worn on the upper body.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 15:7-8

UDB:

⁷ One of the four living creatures gave each of the seven angels a golden bowl filled with wine. The wine symbolized that God, who lives forever, was very angry with the people who had rebelled against him and was going to punish them. ⁸ The temple was filled with smoke that symbolized the presence of the glorious and all-powerful God. No one was able to enter the temple until the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways.

ULB:

⁷ One of the four living creatures gave to the seven angels seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever. ⁸ The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power. No one could enter it until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- creature
- angel, archangel
- gold
- wrath, fury
- God
- forever
- temple
- glory, glorious
- power, powers
- plague

translationNotes:

- **the four living creatures** - “living being” or “living thing.” See how you translated “living creatures” in 4:6
- **seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God** - The image of the wine in the bowls can be stated clearly. The word “wrath” here refers to punishment. The wine is a symbol for punishment. AT: “seven gold bowls full of the wine that represents God’s wrath” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Symbolic Language](#))
- **until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed** - “until the seven angels finished sending the seven plagues to the earth”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 16:5-7, which are extended quotations.

This chapter forms the conclusion of a major section of the book of Revelation, ending the period of wrath or great judgment by God. (See: [judge, judgment](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

“The most holy place”

This statement has led some scholars to believe the Jewish temple reflected a scene in heaven. (See: [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven bowl judgments

This chapter reveals judgments called the seven bowl judgments. The judgments are pictured as being poured out, emphasizing their quickness and totality. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The tone of this chapter is meant to shock the reader. This should not be minimized in translation.

Armageddon

This is a word in Hebrew. Paul does not “translate” this word into Greek but chooses to “transliterate” it by transferring it into Greek using Greek letters instead of Hebrew letters. The translators of the ULB and UDB have not translated this word either. The translator should try to form the sounds of this without translating its meaning.

Links:

- [Revelation 16:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 16:1**UDB:**

¹ In the vision I heard someone in the temple speak in a loud voice to the angels who had the seven bowls. He said, “Go from here and pour out on the earth the wine in the seven bowls. This will make the people suffer because God is angry with them.”

ULB:

16¹ I heard a loud voice call out of the temple and say to the seven angels, “Go and pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God’s wrath.”

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [temple](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [God](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues to describe the part of the vision about the seven angels with the seven plagues. The seven plagues are the seven bowls of God’s wrath.
- **I heard** - The word “I” refers to John.
- **bowls of God’s wrath** - The image of the wine in the bowls can be stated clearly. The word “wrath” here refers to punishment. The wine is a symbol for punishment. AT: “bowls full of the wine that represents God’s wrath.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [15:7](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:2

UDB:

² So the first angel went and poured out on the earth what was contained in his bowl. As a result, horrible and painful sores broke out on the people who had allowed the beast's servants to write the beast's name on them, those who had worshiped the beast's image.

ULB:

² The first angel went and poured out his bowl on the earth; ugly and painful sores came on the people who had the mark of the beast, those who worshiped his image.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [beast](#)
- [worship](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word "bowl" refers to what is in it. AT: "poured out the wine from his bowl" or "poured out God's wrath from his bowl" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **painful sores** - "painful wounds." These could be infections from diseases or injuries that have not healed.
- **mark of the beast** - This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in [13:17](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:3**UDB:**

³ Then the second angel poured out upon the ocean what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water changed its appearance, and it turned into blood, but not living blood. It was like the blood of a dead man, and every creature that lived in the ocean died.

ULB:

³ The second angel poured out his bowl into the sea. It became blood, like the blood of a dead person, and every living thing in the sea died.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [blood](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the sea** - This refers to all the salt water lakes and oceans. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ Then the third angel poured out upon the rivers and water springs what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water in the rivers and springs turned into blood. ⁵ I heard the angel who has power over the waters say to God, "O God, you exist and have always existed. You are the holy one. You are a fair judge of people. ⁶ The people who rebelled against you murdered your holy people and the prophets. So you are just in punishing them by giving them blood to drink. This is what they deserve." ⁷ Then I heard someone at the altar answer, "Yes, Lord God, you who rule over everything, you punish people rightly and justly."

ULB:

⁴ The third angel poured out his bowl into the rivers and the springs of water, and they became blood. ⁵ I heard the angel of the waters say,

"You are righteous—the one who is and who was, the Holy One—

because you have judged these things. [1]Some older copies read,
You are righteous, Lord—the one who is and who was and who is to be, because you have judged these things.

⁶ Because they poured out the blood of the believers and prophets,
you have given them blood to drink;
it is what they deserve."

⁷ I heard the altar reply,

"Yes, Lord God Almighty,
your judgments are true and righteous."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- fountain, spring
- water, waters
- blood
- righteous, righteousness
- Holy One
- judge, judgment
- believer
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- altar

- [Lord](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **rivers and the springs of water** - This refers to all bodies of fresh water. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the angel of the waters** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the third angel who was in charge of pouring out God’s wrath on the rivers and springs of water or 2) this was another angel who was in charge of all the waters.
- **You are righteous** - “You” refers to God. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **the one who is and who was** - “God who is and who was.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [1:4](#).
- **they poured out the blood of the believers and prophets** - Here “poured out the blood” means killed. AT: “evil people murdered the believers and prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you have given them blood to drink** - God will make the evil people drink the waters that he turned to blood.
- **I heard the altar reply** - The word “altar” here refers perhaps to someone at the altar. “I heard someone at the altar reply” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Then the fourth angel poured out on the sun what was contained in his bowl. He was given permission to make the sun so hot that it would scorch people with fire. ⁹ So the people were severely burned, and they said evil things about God because he had the power to make them suffer in these ways. But they still refused to turn away from their evil behavior and refused to praise him.

ULB:

⁸ The fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was given permission to scorch the people with fire. ⁹ They were scorched by the terrible heat, and they blasphemed the name of God, who has the power over these plagues. They did not repent or give him glory.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- fire
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- name
- power, powers
- plague
- repent, repentance
- glory, glorious

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **it was given permission to scorch the people** - John speaks about the sun as if it were a person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “and caused the sun to severely burn the people” (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **They were scorched by the terrible heat** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The extreme heat burned them badly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they blasphemed the name of God** - Here the name of God represents God. AT: “they blasphemed God” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who has the power over these plagues** - This phrase reminds readers of something they already know about God. It helps to explain why the people were blaspheming God. AT: “because he has the power over these plagues” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

- **the power over these plagues** - This refers to the power to inflict these plagues on people, and the power to stop the plagues. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ When the fifth angel poured out on the throne of the beast what was contained in his bowl, it became dark where the beast ruled. So the beast and the people whom the beast ruled were biting their tongues because they were suffering intense pain. ¹¹ They insulted God who rules in heaven because their sores were so painful. But they refused to stop doing the evil things that they were doing.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then the fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and darkness covered its kingdom. They chewed on their tongues because of the pain. ¹¹ They blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pain and sores, and they still refused to repent of what they had done.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [throne](#)
- [beast](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the throne of the beast** - This is where the beast reigns from. It may refer to the capital city of his kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **darkness covered its kingdom** - Darkness is spoken of as if it were something like a blanket. AT: “it became dark in all his kingdom” or “all of his kingdom became dark” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **They chewed ... They blasphemed** - This refers to the people in the beast’s kingdom.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 16 Translation Questions

Revelation 16:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then the sixth angel poured out on the Euphrates River what was contained in his bowl. The water in the river dried up so that the rulers from the eastern countries could cross it with their armies. ¹³ Then I saw evil spirits that looked like frogs. One came out of the mouth of the dragon, one from the mouth of the beast, and one from the mouth of the false prophet. ¹⁴ Those spirits were demons who were able to perform miracles. They went out to the rulers of the whole world in order to gather their armies. This is so that they will fight on the important day when Almighty God punishes his enemies.

ULB:

¹² The sixth angel poured out his bowl into the great river, the Euphrates. Its water was dried up in order to prepare the way for the kings that would come from the east. ¹³ I saw three unclean spirits that looked like frogs coming out of the mouths of the dragon, of the beast, and of the false prophet. ¹⁴ For they are spirits of demons performing miraculous signs. They were going out to the kings of the whole world in order to gather them together for the battle on the great day of God Almighty.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- Euphrates River
- king
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- beast
- false prophet
- miracle, wonder, sign
- sign, proof, reminder
- world, worldly

translationNotes:

- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Its water was dried up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “And its water dried up” or “And caused its water to dry up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **looked like frogs** - A frog is a small animal that lives near water. Jews considered them unclean animals.

- **dragon** - This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ (I heard the Lord Jesus say, “You must listen carefully to me: I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief. So I will be happy with those who stay alert and keep on living in the right way so that they will not be ashamed. They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on so that he will not be ashamed in front of other people.”) ¹⁶ The evil spirits will gather the rulers at a place named in the Hebrew language Armageddon.

ULB:

¹⁵ (“Look! I am coming as a thief! Blessed is the one who keeps watching, keeping his garments on so that he will not go out naked and they see his shameful condition.”) ¹⁶ They brought them together at the place that is called Armageddon in Hebrew.

translationWords:

- bless, blessed, blessing
- watch, watchman
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- Hebrew

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verse 15 is a break from the main storyline of John’s vision. These are words spoken by Jesus. The storyline continues in verse 16.
- **Look! I am coming** - It can be stated clearly that the Lord Jesus was saying this as in the UDB. The parentheses are used here to show that this is not part of the storyline in the vision. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I am coming as a thief** - Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected. See how you translated a similar phrase in [3:3](#). (See: [Simile](#))
- **keeping his garments on** - Living the right way is spoken of as keeping one’s clothes on. AT: “doing what is right like people keeping their clothes on” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **keeping his garments on** - Some versions translate, “keeping his garments with him.”
- **they see his shameful condition** - Here the word “they” refers to other people.
- **They brought them together** - “The spirits of the demons brought the kings and their armies together”
- **the place that is called** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the place that people call” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Armageddon** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out into the air what was contained in his bowl. As a result, someone said with a loud voice from the throne in the very holy place, “The time for God to punish rebellious people is finished.” ¹⁸ When the angel emptied his bowl, lightning flashed, there were rumblings and thunder, and the earth shook. It shook more violently than it had ever shaken since people first lived on earth. ¹⁹ As a result, the very large city split into three parts. God also destroyed the cities in the other nations. God did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much. So he made them drink a cup of the wine that made them suffer because he was angry with them.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air. Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne, saying, “It is done!” ¹⁸ There were flashes of lightning, rumbles, crashes of thunder, and a terrible earthquake—an earthquake greater than any that has ever happened since human beings have been on the earth, so great was this earthquake. ¹⁹ The great city was split into three parts, and the nations’ cities collapsed. Then God called to mind Babylon the great, and he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- voice
- temple
- throne
- nation
- mind
- Babylon, Babylonian
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The seventh angel pours out the seventh bowl of God’s wrath.
- **poured out his bowl** - The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl.” See how you translated this in [16:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne** - This means someone sitting on the throne or someone standing near the throne spoke loudly. It is unclear who is speaking. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **flashes of lightning** - Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [4:5](#).
- **rumbles, crashes of thunder** - These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [4:5](#).
- **The great city was split** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The earthquake split the great city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Then God called to mind** - "Then God remembered" or "Then God thought of" or "Then God started to pay attention to." This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten.
- **he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath** - The wine is a symbol of his wrath. Making people drink it is a symbol of punishing them. AT: "he made the people of that city drink the wine that represents his wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 16:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Also as a result of the earthquake, every island disappeared, and the mountains became flat land. ²¹ Huge hailstones, each weighing about thirty-four kilograms, fell from the sky onto the people. Then people blasphemed God because he had punished them in this terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large.

ULB:

²⁰ Every island disappeared, and the mountains were no longer found. ²¹ Great hailstones, weighing about a talent, came down from the sky upon the people. They cursed God for the plague of hail because that plague was so terrible.

translationWords:

- [hail](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This is part of the seventh bowl of God's wrath.
- **the mountains were no longer found** - The inability to see any mountains is metonymy expressing the idea that no mountains existed any longer. AT: "there were no longer any mountains" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a talent** - "34 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prostitute

The Jews were often pictured as adulterous people and occasionally as prostitutes. This does not mean this is the reference here. The context may favor identifying the prostitute as Satan, but the translator should allow this illustration to be vague. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven hills

Jerusalem was said to sit atop seven hills. This is possibly a reference to the city of Jerusalem.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

John uses many different metaphors in this chapter. He gives some explanation of their meaning but allows them to remain relatively unclear. The translator should attempt to do the same. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up”

This phrase is intended to contrast the statement that Jesus “was and is and is to come” used elsewhere in Scripture. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The use of paradox

This is a seemingly absurd statement, which appears to contradict itself. A paradox occurs in this chapter: the beast “is himself also an eighth king; but he is one of those seven kings.” The translator should not attempt to resolve this paradox and it should remain a mystery.

Links:

- [Revelation 17:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 17:1-2

UDB:

¹ One of the seven angels, who had one of the seven bowls, came to me and said, "Come with me and I will show you how God will punish the prostitute, the woman who represents the city in which there are many canals of water. ² The kings of the earth have acted immorally and idolatrously with her. The people on the earth acted immorally in the same way. It was as if they had gotten drunk on wine that she gave them."

ULB:

17 ¹ One of the seven angels who had been holding the seven bowls came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the condemnation of the great prostitute who is seated on many waters. ² It is with her that the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality. It is with the wine of her sexual immorality that the earth's inhabitants became drunk."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- condemn, condemnation
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- water, waters
- king
- earth, earthly
- commit, committed, commitment
- sexual immorality
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- drunk, drunkard

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe the part of his vision about the great prostitute.
- **the condemnation of the great prostitute who is seated on many waters** - The noun "condemnation" can be expressed with the verb "condemn." AT: "how God will condemn the great prostitute who is seated on many waters" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the great prostitute** - "the prostitute that everyone knows about." She represents a certain sinful city. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **on many waters** - If you need to, you can use a more specific word for the kind of water. AT: "on many rivers"

- **It is with the wine of her sexual immorality that the earth's inhabitants became drunk -** The wine represents sexual immorality. AT: "The people of the earth became drunk by drinking her wine, that is, they were sexually immoral" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))
- **her sexual immorality** - This may well have a double meaning: sexual immorality among people and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:3-5

UDB:

³ Then God's Spirit took control of me, and the angel carried me away to a desolate area. There I saw a woman who was sitting on a red beast. The beast had written names all over itself. They were names that insulted God. The beast had seven heads and ten horns. ⁴ The woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had jewelry of gold, precious stones, and pearls; she held in her hand a golden cup. The cup was full of something to drink that stands for the detestable and filthy things that she does when she commits sexual immorality. ⁵ There was a name written on her forehead, a name with a secret meaning. It is "This woman is Babylon, the very evil city! She is the mother of all the prostitutes on the earth. She teaches them to do all the filthy, immoral things in the world."

ULB:

³ Then the angel carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was full of blasphemous names. The beast had seven heads and ten horns. ⁴ The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet and was adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. She was holding in her hand a golden cup full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality. ⁵ On her forehead was written a name having a secret meaning: "Babylon the great, the mother of prostitutes and of the detestable things of the earth."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- desert, wilderness
- beast
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- name
- gold
- sexual immorality
- Babylon, Babylonian
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- detestable, detest

translationNotes:

- **carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness** - The setting changes from John being in heaven to being in a wilderness. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **precious stones, and pearls** - "many kinds of expensive stones"

- **pearls** - beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **On her forehead was written a name** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone had written on her forehead a name” (See: [Active or Passive](#)).
- **Babylon the great** - If it needs to be made clear that the name refers to the woman, it can be put in a sentence. AT: “I am Babylon, the powerful one” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:6-7

UDB:

⁶ I saw that the woman had become drunk because she had drunk the blood of God's people, those who had suffered for proclaiming the truth about Jesus. When I saw her, I was completely amazed.

⁷ The angel said to me, "Do not be amazed. I will explain to you the hidden meaning of the woman and of the beast on which she rides, the beast with the seven heads and the ten horns.

ULB:

⁶ I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of the believers and with the blood of the martyrs for Jesus. When I saw her, I was greatly astonished. ⁷ But the angel said to me, "Why are you astonished? I will explain to you the meaning of the woman and of the beast that is carrying her, the beast that has the seven heads and the ten horns.

translationWords:

- [drunk, drunkard](#)
- [blood](#)
- [believer](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [beast](#)
- [horn, horns](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel begins to explain to John the meaning of the prostitute and the red beast. The angel explains these things through verse 18.
- **was drunk with the blood** - "drunk because she drank the blood"
- **the martyrs for Jesus** - "the believers who have died because they told others about Jesus"
- **astonished** - "amazed" or "surprised"
- **Why are you astonished?** - The angel used this question to gently scold John. AT: "You should not be astonished!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:8

UDB:

⁸ The beast that you saw lived previously. Eventually God will destroy him, but now he is not alive. He is about to come up from the shaft that went down but had no ending. When that beast appears again, the people on the earth will be amazed. They are people whose names have not been written in the Book of Life before God created the world.

ULB:

⁸ The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up from the bottomless pit. Then it will go on to destruction. Those who live on the earth, those whose names have not been written in The Book of Life since the foundation of the world—they will be astounded when they see the beast that existed, does not exist now, but is about to come.

translationWords:

- [beast](#)
- [pit](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)

translationNotes:

- **the bottomless pit** - This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [9:1](#).
- **Then it will go on to destruction** - The noun “destruction” can be translated with a verb. AT: “Then he will be destroyed” or “Then God will destroy him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **it will go on to destruction** - The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were going to it. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **those whose names have not been written** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whose names God did not write” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **since the foundation of the world** - “before God created the world” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:9-10

UDB:

⁹ People need to think wisely to understand this: The seven heads of the beast on which the woman sits symbolize the seven hills of the city that the woman represents. They also symbolize seven rulers. ¹⁰ Five of those rulers have died. One is still alive. The seventh ruler has not yet come. When he comes, he must remain for only a short time.

ULB:

⁹ This calls for a mind that has wisdom. The seven heads are seven hills on which the woman is seated. ¹⁰ They are also seven kings. Five kings have fallen, one exists, and the other has not yet come; when he comes, he can remain only for a little while.

translationWords:

- mind
- wise, wisdom
- king

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel continues speaking. Here he explains the meaning of the seven heads of the beast that the woman is riding.
- **This calls for** - “This makes it necessary to have”
- **This calls for a mind that has wisdom** - The abstract nouns “mind” and “wisdom” can be expressed with “think” and “wise” or “wisely.” Why a wise mind is needed can be stated clearly. AT “A wise mind is needed in order to understand this” or “You need to think wisely in order to understand this” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The seven heads are seven hills** - Here “are” means “stands for,” “represents.”
- **Five kings have fallen** - The angel speaks of dying as falling. AT: “Five kings have died” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **one exists** - “one is king now” or “one king is alive now”
- **the other has not yet come; when he comes** - Not having existed yet is spoken of as not yet having come. AT: “the other has not yet become king; when he becomes king” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he can remain only for a little while** - The angel speaks of someone continuing to be king as if he were remaining in a place. AT: “he can be king only for a little while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:11**UDB:**

¹¹ The beast that lived before and then was not alive will be the eighth ruler. He is actually one of those seven rulers, but God will certainly destroy him.

ULB:

¹¹ The beast that existed, but does not exist now, is itself also an eighth king; but it is one of those seven kings, and it is going to destruction.

translationWords:

- [beast](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **it is one of those seven kings** - Possible meanings are 1) the beast rules twice: first as one of the seven kings, and then as the eighth king or 2) the beast belongs to that group of seven kings because he is like them.
- **it is going to destruction** - The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were going to it. AT: “it will certainly be destroyed” or “God will surely destroy it” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:12-14

UDB:

¹² The ten horns that you saw represent ten rulers who have not yet begun to rule. They will receive authority in order to rule people together with the beast, but they will rule for only a short time, as if it were for only one hour. ¹³ Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing. As a result they will give to the beast their right and authority to rule people. ¹⁴ The rulers and the beast will fight against the lamb. He will defeat them because he is the Lord who rules over all other lords and the King who rules over all other kings. The people who are with him are the ones whom God has chosen and called to himself, and who keep serving him faithfully.”

ULB:

¹² The ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they will receive authority as kings for one hour together with the beast. ¹³ These are of one mind, and they give over their power and authority to the beast. ¹⁴ They will wage war against the Lamb. But the Lamb will conquer them because he is Lord of lords and King of kings—and with him are the called ones, the chosen ones, and the faithful ones.”

translationWords:

- king
- receive
- kingdom
- authority
- beast
- mind
- power, powers
- lamb, Lamb of God
- Lord
- call, calling, called, call out
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- faithful, faithfulness

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel continues speaking to John. Here he explains the meaning of the ten horns of the beast.
- **for one hour** - If your language does not divide the day into 24 hours, you may need to use a more general expression. AT: “for a very short time” or “for a very small part of a day” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

- **These are of one mind** - “These all think the same thing” or “These all agree to do the same thing”
- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in 5:6. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the called ones, the chosen ones, and the faithful ones** - This refers to one group of people. “Called” and “chosen” can be expressed in active form. AT: “the called, chosen, and faithful ones” or “the ones whom God has called and chosen and who are faithful to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:15

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the angel said to me, "The waters that you saw in the city represent many different kinds of people, and many different groups of people, and different languages that the people speak, where the prostitute sits.

ULB:

¹⁵ The angel said to me, "The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation](#)

translationNotes:

- **The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages** - Here "are" stands for "represents." (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The waters** - If you need to, you can use a more specific word for the kind of water. AT: "The rivers." See how you translated "many waters" in [17:1](#).
- **multitudes** - "large groups of people" or "great numbers of people"
- **languages** - This refers to people who speak the languages. See how you translated this in [10:11](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ The ten horns that you saw represent rulers. They and the beast will hate the prostitute. So they will take away everything that is in the city as if they were leaving it naked. They will destroy it as if devouring flesh, and they will burn it completely. ¹⁷ They will do that because God has caused them to decide to do what he wants them to do. As a result, they will let the beast have their power to rule until what God has said is fulfilled.

ULB:

¹⁶ The ten horns that you saw—they and the beast will hate the prostitute. They will make her desolate and naked, they will devour her flesh, and they will burn her completely with fire. ¹⁷ For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give their power to rule to the beast until God's words are fulfilled.

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **prostitute, harlot, whore**
- **desolate, desolation**
- **devour**
- **flesh**
- **fire**
- **God**
- **heart**
- **power, powers**
- **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture**
- **fulfill**

translationNotes:

- **make her desolate and naked** - “steal everything that she has and leave her with nothing”
- **they will devour her flesh** - Destroying her completely is spoken of as eating all her flesh. “They will destroy her completely” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing ... fulfilled** - They would agree to give their power to the beast, but it would not be that they want to obey God. AT: “For God has put it into their hearts to agree to give their power to rule to the beast until God's words are fulfilled, and by doing this, they would carry out God's purpose”
- **God has put it into their hearts** - The heart represents desires. Making them want to do something is spoken of as putting it in their hearts to do it. AT: “God has made them want” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **power to rule** - “authority” or “kingly authority”
- **until God’s words are fulfilled** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “until God fulfills what he said will happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 17:18

UDB:

¹⁸ The prostitute that you saw represents the very evil city whose leaders rule over the kings of the earth.”

ULB:

¹⁸ The woman you saw is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth.”

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- king

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel finishes speaking to John about the prostitute and the beast.
- **is** - Here “is” stands for “represents.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the great city that rules** - When it says that the city rules, it means that the leader of the city rules. AT: “the great city whose leader rules” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. This entire chapter contains a series of long quotations that are set apart through the use of indentation in the ULB.

Chapter 19 will continue the material contained in this chapter and both should be seen as a single unit.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecy

The angel gives a prophecy about the fall of Babylon. It is spoken as having already happened even though it had not yet happened. This was common in prophecy and emphasizes the inevitability of the coming judgment. It is also prophesied that the people will lament over the fall of Babylon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

Metaphors are frequently used in prophecy. This chapter forms a slight break in the apocalyptic style of the book of Revelation overall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 18:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 18:1-3**UDB:**

¹ After this I saw another angel, one who had great authority, coming down from heaven. The earth became bright because he was shining so intensely. ² He shouted with a very loud voice, "God is about to completely destroy the very evil city of Babylon. As a result, all kinds of evil spirits will live there, and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute ³ with whom all the people groups engaged with her in the passion of sexual immorality, which is like getting drunk on too much wine. Yes, and the kings of the earth have done the same things with her. The world's merchants became rich because she wanted to commit so much sexual immorality."

ULB:

18 ¹ After these things I saw another angel coming down out of heaven. He had great authority, and the earth was illumined by his glory. ² He cried out with a mighty voice, saying,

"Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great!

She has become a dwelling place for demons,
a refuge for every unclean spirit,
and a refuge for every unclean and detestable bird.

³ For all the nations have drunk the wine of her immoral passion.

The kings of the earth have committed immorality with her.
The merchants of the earth have become rich from the power of her sensual way of living."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- authority
- glory, glorious
- voice
- Babylon, Babylonian
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- unclean
- nation
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- king
- sexual immorality
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Another angel comes down from heaven and speaks. This is a different angel than the one in the previous chapter, who spoke about the prostitute and the beast.
- **General Information:** - The pronouns “she” and “her” refer to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great** - The angel speaks of Babylon being destroyed as if it had fallen. See how you translated this in [Revelation 14:8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **detestable bird** - “disgusting bird” or “repulsive bird”
- **all the nations** - The nations is a metonym for the people of those nations. AT: “the people of all the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **have drunk the wine of her immoral passion** - This is a symbol for participating in her sexually immoral passion. AT: “have become sexually immoral like her” or “have become drunk like her in sexual sin” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **her immoral passion** - Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **merchants** - A merchant is a person who sells things.
- **from the power of her sensual way of living** - “because she spent so much money on sexual immorality”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ I heard Jesus speak from heaven. He said, "My people, flee from that Babylon in order that you do not sin as those people do. If you sin as they do, I will punish you in those seven different ways, just as I will punish them. ⁵ It is as though their sins have been piled up to heaven and God remembers them, so now he will punish them."

⁶ To the angels whom God assigned to punish Babylon, Jesus said, "Pay back the people of that city to the same extent that they harmed other people. Cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer.

ULB:

⁴ Then I heard another voice from heaven say,
 "Come out from her, my people,
 so that you will not share in her sins,
 and so that you will not receive any of her plagues.

⁵ Her sins have piled up as high as heaven,
 and God has remembered her evil actions.

⁶ Pay her back as she has paid others back,
 and repay her double for what she has done;
 in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her.

translationWords:

- voice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- people of God, my people
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- receive
- plague
- God
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Another voice from heaven begins to speak.

- **General Information:** - The pronouns “she” and “her” refer to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. (See: [Personification](#))
- **another voice** - The word “voice” refers to the speaker, which is probably either Jesus or the Father. AT: “someone else” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Her sins have piled up as high as heaven** - The voice speaks of Babylon’s sins as if they were objects that could form a pile. AT: “Her sins are so many they are like a pile that reaches heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **remembered** - “thought of” or “started to pay attention to.” This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten. See how you translated “called to mind” in [16:19](#).
- **Pay her back as she has paid others back** - The voice speaks of punishment as if it were payment. AT: “Punish her as she has punished others” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **repay her double** - The voice speaks of punishment as if it were payment. AT: “punish her twice as much” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her** - The voice speaks of causing others to suffer as preparing strong wine for them to drink. AT: “prepare for her the wine of suffering that is twice as strong as what she made for others” or “make her suffer twice as much as she made others suffer” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **mix double the amount** - Possible meanings are 1) “prepare twice the amount” or 2) “make it twice as strong”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ To the same extent that Babylon, like a woman, has honored herself and done the things she wanted to do, to that extent torment her and cause her to grieve. Do that because in her mind she thought, 'I rule as a queen! I am not a widow, and I will never mourn as widows do!' ⁸ So in one day, terrible calamities will come upon her. The people in that city will die, others will mourn for them, people will be hungry because there will be no food, and the city will burn up. The Lord God is able to punish her because he is mighty."

ULB:

⁷ As she glorified herself and lived in luxury,
give her just as much torture and grief.

For she says in her heart,

'I am seated as a queen;

I am not a widow,

and I will never see mourning.'

⁸ Therefore in one day her plagues will come:

death, mourning, and famine.

She will be consumed by fire,

for the Lord God is mighty, and he is her judge."

translationWords:

- glorify
- heart
- queen
- mourn, mourning
- plague
- famine
- Lord
- mighty, might
- judge

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The same voice from heaven continues speaking about Babylon as if it were a woman.

- **she glorified herself** - “the people of Babylon glorified themselves”
- **I am seated as a queen** - She claims to be a ruler, having her own authority. (See: [Simile](#))
- **I am not a widow** - She implies that she will not be dependent on other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will never see mourning** - Experiencing mourning is spoken of as seeing mourning. AT: “I will never mourn” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **her plagues will come** - Existing in the future is spoken of as a coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She will be consumed by fire** - Being burned up by fires is spoken of as being eaten up by fire. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Fire will completely burn her up” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:9-10

UDB:

⁹ The kings on earth who have acted immorally with her and have done just what they wanted to do with her will weep and mourn for her when they see the smoke of the fire that will burn there. ¹⁰ They will stand far away from Babylon because they will be afraid that they will suffer just as she does. They will say, "How terrible it is for Babylon, that strong city! God is punishing her suddenly and swiftly!"

ULB:

⁹ The kings of the earth who committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her will weep and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning. ¹⁰ They will stand off at a distance, afraid of her torment, saying,

"Woe, woe to the great city,
Babylon, the powerful city!
For in a single hour your punishment has come."

translationWords:

- king
- sexual immorality
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- torment
- woe
- Babylon, Babylonian
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John tells what people say about Babylon.
- **General Information:** - In these verses the word "her" refers to the city of Babylon.
- **committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her** - "sinned sexually and did whatever they wanted just as the people of Babylon did"
- **afraid of her torment** - Torment can be translated as a verb. AT: "afraid that they will be tormented as Babylon is" or "afraid that God will torment them as he torments Babylon"
- **Woe, woe** - This is repeated for emphasis.
- **your punishment has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ The merchants of the earth will weep and will mourn for her because no one in her will ever again buy the things that they have to sell. **12-13** They sell ornaments made of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls. They sell expensive cloth made of fine linen and silk, expensive cloth that is dyed purple and crimson. They sell all kinds of rare wood, all kinds of items made of ivory, costly wood, bronze, iron, and marble. They sell cinnamon, spice, perfume, frankincense, wine, olive oil, fine flour, and grain. They sell cattle, sheep, horses, and chariots. They even sell human beings as slaves.

ULB:

¹¹ The merchants of the earth weep and mourn for her, since no one buys her merchandise anymore— ¹² merchandise of gold, silver, precious stone, pearls, fine linen, purple, silk, scarlet, all kinds of scented wood, every vessel of ivory, every vessel made of most precious wood, bronze, iron, marble, ¹³ cinnamon, spice, incense, myrrh, frankincense, wine, oil, fine flour, wheat, cattle and sheep, horses and chariots, and slaves and human souls.

translationWords:

- gold
- silver
- bronze
- incense
- myrrh
- frankincense
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- wheat
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- sheep, ram, ewe
- horse
- chariot
- servant, slave, slavery
- soul

translationNotes:

- **mourn for her** - “mourn for the people of Babylon”

- **precious stone, pearls** - “many kinds of expensive stones.” See how you translated these in [17:4](#).
- **fine linen** - expensive cloth made from flax. See how you translated “linen” in [15:6](#).
- **purple** - “purple cloth”
- **silk** - This is soft, strong cloth made from the fine string that silkworms make when they make their cocoons. AT: “expensive cloth” or “fine cloth” or “beautiful cloth” (See [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **scarlet** - “red cloth”
- **every vessel of ivory** - “all kinds of containers made of ivory”
- **ivory** - a beautiful hard, white material that people get from the tusks or teeth of very large animals such as elephants or walruses. AT: “tusks” or “valuable animal teeth” (See [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **marble** - a precious stone used for building (See [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **cinnamon** - a spice that smells nice and comes from the bark of a certain kind of tree
- **spice** - a substance used to add flavor to food or a good smell to oil

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ The good things you people longed to have are gone! All your luxurious and splendid possessions have vanished! They will be gone forever!

ULB:

¹⁴ The fruit that you longed for with all your might is gone from you. All your luxury and splendor have vanished, never to be found again.

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)

translationNotes:

- **The fruit** - They speak of good things as if they were fruit. AT: "The good things (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **longed for with all your might** - "wanted very much"
- **never to be found again** - Not to be found stands for not existing. This figure of speech can be stated in active form. AT: "you will never have them again" (See: [Active or Passive, Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ The merchants who sold these things and who had become rich will stand far away because they will be afraid that they will suffer just as the city has. They will weep and mourn, ¹⁶ and they will say, "Terrible things have happened to that great city! That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes made of fine linen cloth and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson, and adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. ¹⁷ But suddenly and swiftly God has destroyed all these expensive things."

Every ship's captain, all people who travel by ship, all sailors, and all others who earn their living by traveling on the ocean will stand far away from the city."

ULB:

¹⁵ The merchants of these goods who became rich by her will stand away from her at a distance because of the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning loudly.

¹⁶ They will say,

"Woe, woe to the great city

that was dressed in fine linen,

in purple, and in scarlet,

and was adorned with gold,

precious jewels, and pearls!

¹⁷ In a single hour all that wealth has been wasted."

Every ship's captain, every seafaring man, sailors, and all whose living is made from the sea, stood off at a distance.

translationWords:

- woe
- gold
- waste, wasteland

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses, the word "her" refers to the city of Babylon.
- **because of the fear of her torment** - The nouns "fear" and "torment" can be expressed with phrases that tell who felt the fear and torment. AT: "because they will be afraid of how she is being tormented" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **weeping and mourning loudly** - This is what the merchants will be doing. AT: “and they will weep and mourn loudly”
- **the great city that was dressed in fine linen** - Throughout this chapter, Babylon is spoken of as if it were a woman. The merchants speak of Babylon as being dressed in fine linen because its people were dressed in fine linen. AT: “the great city, which was like a woman dressed in fine linen” or “the great city, whose women were dressed in fine linen” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **that was dressed in fine linen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that wore fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **and was adorned with gold** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and adorned herself with gold” or “and adorned themselves with gold” or “and wore gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **precious jewels** - “valuable gems” or “treasured gems”
- **pearls** - beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **whose living is made from the sea** - The phrase “from the sea” refers to what they do on the sea. AT: “who travel on the sea to make their living” or “who sail on the sea to different places in order to trade things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ When they see the smoke of the fire that is burning there, they will shout, “No other city has ever been like that great city!” ¹⁹ They will throw dust on their heads to show that they are sad, and they will shout, weep, and mourn. They will say, “Terrible things have happened to Babylon. That city made many people rich, the people who had ships that sail on the ocean in order to sell their expensive things. God has suddenly and swiftly destroyed that city!”

²⁰ Then someone spoke from heaven saying, “You who live in heaven, rejoice over what has happened to Babylon! You who are God’s people, including you apostles and prophets, rejoice. You must rejoice; God has justly punished the people there because they acted so terribly toward you!”

ULB:

¹⁸ They cried out as they saw the smoke of her burning. They said, “What city is like the great city?”

¹⁹ They threw dust on their heads, and cried out, weeping and mourning,

”Woe, woe to the great city

where all who had their ships

at sea became rich from her wealth.

For in a single hour she has been destroyed.”

²⁰ ”Rejoice over her, heaven,

you believers, apostles, and prophets,

for God has brought your judgment on her!”

translationWords:

- mourn, mourning
- woe
- hour
- rejoice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- believer
- apostle, apostleship
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses the word “they” refers to the sailors and seafarers, and the word “her” refers to the city of Babylon.
- **What city is like the great city?** - This question shows the people the importance of the city of Babylon. AT: “No other city is like the great city, Babylon” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **God has brought your judgment on her** - The noun “judgment” can be expressed with the verb “judge.” AT: “God has judged her for you” or “God has judged her because of the bad things she did to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Then a mighty angel picked up a boulder the size of a large stone for grinding grain, and he threw it into the ocean. Then he said, "You people in the great city of Babylon, God will throw down your city so that it will disappear just as that stone disappeared in the ocean! Your city will be gone forever! ²² In your city, there will never again be anyone playing harps, singing, playing flutes, or blowing trumpets. There will no longer be any skilled workers making things. There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills.

ULB:

²¹ A mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone and threw it into the sea, saying,

"In this way, Babylon, the great city,
will be thrown down with violence
and will not be seen anymore.

²² The sound made by harpists, musicians,
flute players, and trumpeters
will not be heard anymore in you.

No craftsman of any kind
will be found in you.

No sound of a mill
will be heard anymore in you.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- Babylon, Babylonian
- harp
- flute, pipe
- trumpet

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Another angel begins to speak about Babylon. This is a different angel than the ones who have spoken previously.
- **millstone** - a large round stone used to crush grain

- **Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will not be seen anymore** - God will completely destroy the city. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will violently throw down Babylon, the great city, and it will no longer exist” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **and will not be seen anymore** - “and no one will see it anymore.” Not being seen here means that it will not exist. AT: “it will not exist anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The sound made by harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters will not be heard anymore in you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one in your city will ever again hear the sound that harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters make” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in you** - The angel speaks as if Babylon were there listening to him. AT: “in Babylon” (See: [Apostrophe](#))
- **will not be heard anymore in you** - “no one will hear them anymore in you.” Not being heard here means that they will not be there. AT: “they will not be in your city anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **No craftsman ... will be found in you** - Not being found there means that they will not be there. AT: “No craftsman of any kind will be in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **No sound of a mill will be heard anymore in you** - The sound of something not being heard means that no one will make that sound. AT: “No one will use the mills in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 18:23-24**UDB:**

²³ No lamp will ever again shine there. There will never again be the happy voices of any bridegroom and his bride. God will destroy your city because your merchants were the most important men in the world. You used witchcraft to deceive people of all people-groups. ²⁴ You are also responsible for killing the prophets and others of God's people. Indeed, you are guilty of every murder committed on the earth!"

ULB:

²³ The light of a lamp

will not shine in you anymore.

The voices of the bridegroom and the bride

will not be heard in you anymore,

for your merchants were the princes of the earth,

and the nations were deceived by your sorcery.

²⁴ In her the blood of prophets and believers was found,

and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth."

translationWords:

- light
- lamp
- bridegroom
- bride
- prince, princess
- nation
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- blood
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- believer

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel who threw the millstone finishes talking.
- **General Information:** - The words "you," "your," and "her" refer to Babylon.

- **The voices of the bridegroom and the bride will not be heard in you anymore** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one will ever again hear in Babylon the happy voices of a bridegroom and a bride” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will not be heard in you anymore** - “no one will hear them in you anymore.” Not being heard here means that they will not be there. AT: “will not be in your city anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **your merchants were the princes of the earth** - The angel speaks of important and powerful people as if they were princes. AT: “your merchants were like princes of the earth” or “your merchants were the most important men in the world” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the nations were deceived by your sorcery** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you deceived the people of the nations with your magic spells” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **In her the blood of prophets and believers was found, and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth** - Blood being found there means that the people there were guilty of killing people. AT: “Babylon is guilty for killing the prophets and believers and all the other people in the world who were killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 19:1-8, which are extended quotations, and possibly songs.

Chapter 19 continues the material contained in chapter 18 and both should be seen as a single unit.

Special concepts in this chapter

Songs

Heaven is often described as a place where people sing. These are songs of worship to God. This illustrates that heaven is place where God is continually worshiped. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Wedding celebration

The wedding celebration or feast is a very important image used in scripture. In Jewish culture, paradise, or life with God after death, was often pictured as a feast. Here, Jesus pictures it as a wedding feast that a king prepares for his son, who has just gotten married. In addition, Jesus emphasizes that not all people whom God invites will properly prepare themselves to participate. These people will be thrown out from the feast.

Links:

- [Revelation 19:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 19:1-2**UDB:**

¹ After these things I heard what sounded like a huge crowd in heaven. They were shouting things like,

”Hallelujah! He has saved us!

He is glorious and mighty!

² Praise him because he judges truly and justly!

He has punished the very evil city that was like a prostitute because their people persuaded the other people of earth to act immorally as they did.

Praise him because he has punished them for murdering his servants!”

ULB:

19 ¹ After these things I heard what sounded like a loud voice of a large number of people in heaven saying,

”Hallelujah.

Salvation, glory, and power belong to our God.

² His judgments are true and just,

for he has judged the great prostitute

who corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality.

He has taken revenge for the blood of his servants,

which she herself shed.”

translationWords:

- voice
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- salvation
- glory, glorious
- power, powers
- God
- judge, judgment
- true, truth, come true
- just, justice, justly
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- corrupt, corruption

- [sexual immorality](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [blood](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the next part of John's vision. Here he describes the rejoicing in heaven over the fall of the great prostitute, who is the city of Babylon.
- **I heard** - Here "I" refers to John.
- **Hallelujah** - This word means "Praise God" or "Let us praise God."
- **the great prostitute** - Here John refers to the city of Babylon whose wicked people rule over all the people of the earth and lead them to worship false gods. He speaks of the wicked people of Babylon as if they were a great prostitute. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who corrupted the earth** - Here "the earth" is a metonym for its inhabitants. AT: "who corrupted the people of the earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the blood of his servants** - Here "the blood" is a metonym that represents murder. AT: "murdering his servants" (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **she herself** - This refers to Babylon. The reflexive pronoun "herself" is used to add emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:3-4**UDB:**

³ The crowd shouted a second time, saying,

“Hallelujah! The smoke of the fire that is burning that city will rise forever!”

⁴ The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures prostrated themselves and worshiped God, who sits on the throne. They said:

“It is true! Hallelujah!”

ULB:

³ They spoke a second time:

”Hallelujah!

The smoke rises from her forever and ever.”

⁴ The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures prostrated themselves and worshiped God who was seated on the throne. They were saying,

“Amen. Hallelujah!”

translationWords:

- forever
- elder
- creature
- prostrate
- worship
- throne
- amen, truly

translationNotes:

- **They spoke** - Here “They” refers to the crowd of people in heaven.
- **Hallelujah** - This word means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.” See how you translated this in [19:1](#).
- **smoke rises from her** - This is an ellipsis. You can include the missing words that are implied. AT: “smoke of the fire that is burning in that city will rise” (UDB) (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **from her forever and ever** - “from the idolators forever and ever” or “from those who have prostituted themselves and will suffer forever”
- **from her** - Here “her” refers to Babylon.

- **twenty-four elders** - “24 elders.” See how you translated this in [4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))
- **the four living creatures** - “the four living beings” or “the four living things.” See how you translated this in [4:6](#)
- **who was seated on the throne** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “who sat on the throne” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:5**UDB:**

⁵ Someone spoke from the throne and said,

”All you who are his servants, praise our God!

All you who honor him, whether you are important or not, everyone praise him!”

ULB:

⁵ Then a voice came out from the throne, saying,

”Praise our God,

all you his servants,

you who fear him,

both the unimportant and the powerful.”

translationWords:

- voice
- throne
- praise
- God
- servant, slave, slavery
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **a voice came out from the throne** - Here John speaks of the “voice” as if it were a person. AT: “someone spoke from the throne” (UDB) (See: **Personification**)
- **Praise our God** - Here “our” refers to the speaker and all God’s servants. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **you who fear him** - Here “fear” does not mean to be afraid of God, but to honor him. AT: “all you who honor him” (UDB) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **both the unimportant and the powerful** - The speaker uses these words together to mean all of God’s people. (See: **Merism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:6

UDB:

⁶ Then I heard something like the noise of a huge crowd of people, like the sound of a huge waterfall, and like the sound of loud claps of thunder. They were shouting:

”Hallelujah! Our Lord God, who rules over everything, reigns!

ULB:

⁶ Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like loud crashes of thunder, saying,

”Hallelujah!

For the Lord reigns, the God who rules over all.

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like loud crashes of thunder** - John speaks of what he is hearing as if it were like the sound made by a very large crowd of people, a large body of rushing water, and very loud thunder. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Hallelujah** - This word means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.” See how you translated this in [19:1](#).
- **For the Lord** - “Because the Lord”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ We should rejoice, we should be extremely glad, and we should honor him

because it is now time for the Lamb to be united with the woman he is marrying. She has made herself ready.

⁸ God has permitted her to dress herself in fine linen, bright and clean.”

Fine, bright, and clean linen represents the righteous actions of God’s people.

ULB:

⁷ Let us rejoice and be very happy

and give him the glory

because the wedding celebration of the Lamb has come,

and his bride has made herself ready.

⁸ She was permitted to be dressed

in bright and clean fine linen”

(for fine linen is the righteous acts of holy people).

translationWords:

- rejoice
- glory, glorious
- lamb, Lamb of God
- bride
- righteous, righteousness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The voice of the crowd from the previous verse continues speaking.
- **Let us rejoice** - Here “us” refers to all of God’s servants.
- **give him the glory** - “give God the glory” or “honor God”
- **wedding celebration of the Lamb ... his bride has made herself ready** - Here John speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people together forever as if it were a wedding celebration. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in 5:6. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **has come** - Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his bride has made herself ready** - John speaks of God's people as if they were a bride who is getting ready for her wedding. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She was permitted to be dressed in bright and clean fine linen** - Here "she" refers to the people of God. John speaks of the righteous acts of God's people as if they were a bright and clean dress that a bride wears on her wedding day. You can state this in active form. AT: "God allowed her to wear a dress of bright and clean fine linen" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then the angel said to me, “Write this: how fortunate are the people whom God invites to the feast when the Lamb marries his wife!” He also said to me: “These words that God declares are true!” ¹⁰ I immediately prostrated myself at his feet in order to worship him. But he said to me, “Do not worship me! I am just your fellow servant and the fellow servant of your fellow believers, those who speak the truth about Jesus. God is the one you should worship because it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus!”

ULB:

⁹ The angel said to me, “Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding feast of the Lamb.” He also said to me, “These are true words of God.” ¹⁰ I prostrated myself before his feet to worship him, but he said to me, “Do not do this! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers who hold the testimony about Jesus. Worship God, for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.”

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- bless, blessed, blessing
- lamb, Lamb of God
- true, truth, come true
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- worship
- servant, slave, slavery
- brother
- testimony, testify
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - An angel begins to speak to John. This is likely the same angel who began to speak to John in [17:1](#).
- **those who are invited** - You can state this in active form. AT: “the people whom God invites” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **the wedding feast of the Lamb** - Here the angel speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people forever as if it were a wedding feast. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I prostrated myself** - To prostrate oneself is to lie on the ground, face down, to show respect and willingness to serve. See note in [19:3](#).
- **your brothers** - The word “brothers” here refers to all believers, male and female.
- **who hold the testimony about Jesus** - Here holding stands for believing in or announcing. AT: “who speak the truth about Jesus” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy** - Here “spirit of prophecy” refers to God’s Holy Spirit. AT: “because it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Then I saw the heavens open up, and I was surprised to see a white horse. Jesus, the one who was riding on the horse, is called “Trustworthy and Genuine.” He judges all people according to what is right; he fights in justice against his enemies. ¹² His eyes shone like a flame of fire. There were many royal crowns on his head. A name had been written on him. Only he knows the meaning of that name. ¹³ The cloak he was wearing was drenched with blood. His name is also “The Message of God.”

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw heaven open, and I looked and there was a white horse. The one riding it is called faithful and true. It is with justice that he judges and wages war. ¹² His eyes are like a fiery flame, and on his head are many crowns. He has a name written on him that no one knows but he himself. ¹³ He wears a robe that was dipped in blood, and his name is called the Word of God.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- horse
- call, calling, called, call out
- faithful, faithfulness
- true, truth, come true
- just, justice, justly
- judge
- fire
- crown, to crown
- name
- written
- robe
- blood
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of a new vision. John begins to describe a rider on a white horse.
- **Then I saw heaven open** - This imagery is used to signify the beginning of a new vision. See how you translated this idea in [4:1](#) and [11:19](#) and [15:5](#).
- **The one riding it** - The rider is Jesus.

- **It is with justice that he judges** - Here “justice” refers to what is right. AT: “He judges all people according to what is right” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **His eyes are like a fiery flame** - John speaks of the rider’s eyes as if they shone like a flame of fire. (See: [Simile](#))
- **He has a name written on him** - You can state this in active form. AT: “Someone has written a name on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **that no one knows but he himself** - “Only he knows the meaning of that name” (UDB)
- **He wears a robe that was dipped in blood** - You can state this in an active form. AT: “Blood had covered his robe” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his name is called the Word of God** - You can state this in active form. AT: “his name is also the Word of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The armies of heaven were following him. They were riding on white horses. They were wearing clothes made of clean white linen. ¹⁵ A sharp sword extends from his mouth; with it he will strike the rebellious people groups. He himself will rule them powerfully as though he had an iron rod. He will crush his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress. He will do this for God, who rules over everything and who is furiously angry with them because of their sins. ¹⁶ On his cloak over his thigh a name had been written: “King who rules over all other kings and Lord who rules over all other lords.”

ULB:

¹⁴ The armies of heaven were following him on white horses, dressed in fine linen, white and clean. ¹⁵ Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword with which he strikes down the nations, and he will rule them with an iron rod. He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty. ¹⁶ He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh: “King of kings and Lord of lords.”

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- horse
- sword
- nation
- rod
- winepress
- wrath, fury
- God
- Almighty
- robe
- name
- king
- Lord

translationNotes:

- **Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword** - The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1:16](#).
- **strikes down the nations** - “destroys the nations” or “brings the nations under his control”
- **rule them with an iron rod** - John speaks of the rider’s power as if he were ruling with an iron rod. See how you translated this in [12:5](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty** - John speaks of the rider's destroying his enemies as if they were grapes that a person tramples in a winepress. Here "wrath" refers to God's punishment of evil persons. AT: "He will crush his enemies according to the judgment of God Almighty, just as a person crushes grapes in a winepress" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh:** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone has written a name on his robe and thigh." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun. He called loudly to all the flesh-eating birds flying high in the sky, "Come and gather for the large feast that God is providing for you! ¹⁸ Come and eat the flesh of all God's enemies who are dead—the flesh of kings, of army commanders, of people who fought powerfully, of horses and of the soldiers who rode them, and the flesh of all other kinds of people, whether they were free or slave, important or not. All kinds!"

ULB:

¹⁷ I saw an angel standing in the sun. He called out in a loud voice to all the birds flying overhead, "Come, gather together for the great feast of God. ¹⁸ Come eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of commanders, the flesh of mighty men, the flesh of horses and their riders, and the flesh of all men, both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful."

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- call, calling, called, call out
- voice
- God
- flesh
- king
- commander, command
- mighty, might
- horse
- free, freedom, liberty
- servant, slave, slavery
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **I saw an angel standing in the sun** - Here "the sun" is a metonym for the light of the sun. AT: "Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun" (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful** - The angel uses these two sets of opposite-meaning words together to mean all people. (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 19 General Notes
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Then I saw the beast and the kings of earth with their armies; they had gathered together to fight against the rider on the horse and his army. ²⁰ The rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet. The false prophet is the one who had performed miracles in the beast's presence. By doing that he had deceived the people who had accepted the beast's mark on their foreheads and who had worshiped its image. Then God threw the beast and the false prophet alive into the lake of fire that burns with sulfur.

ULB:

¹⁹ I saw the beast and the kings of the earth with their armies. They were gathering in order to wage war with the one who rode the horse and with his army. ²⁰ The beast was captured and with him the false prophet who performed the signs in his presence. With these signs he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast and who worshiped his image. The two of them were thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur.

translationWords:

- **beast**
- **king**
- **earth, earthly**
- **horse**
- **false prophet**
- **sign, proof, reminder**
- **deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive**
- **receive**
- **worship**
- **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**
- **life, live, living, alive**
- **hell, lake of fire**

translationNotes:

- **The beast was captured and with him the false prophet** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet" (UDB) (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **the mark of the beast** - This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in **13:17**.

- **The two of them were thrown alive** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God threw the beast and the false prophet alive” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the fiery lake of burning sulfur** - “the lake of fire that burns with sulfur” (UDB) or “place full of fire that burns with sulfur”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 19:21**UDB:**

²¹ The rider on the horse killed the rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth. All the birds gorged themselves on the flesh of the people and horses that he had killed.

ULB:

²¹ The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse. All the birds ate their dead flesh.

translationWords:

- sword
- horse
- death, die, dead
- flesh

translationNotes:

- **The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The rider of the horse killed the remainder of the beast’s armies with the sword that extended from his mouth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the sword that came out of the mouth** - The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is about a period of time often referred to as the “millennial kingdom” because it is a kingdom of a thousand years. This chapter is very significant for understanding the events of the last days and the book of Revelation. (See: [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The thousand year reign of Christ

Jesus is said to reign for a thousand years and all the prophecies in Scripture about worldwide peace will be fulfilled. Scholars are divided over whether this is an actual period of time or if it is an allegory for Christ beginning to reign in people’s hearts. It is best to translate this as if Christ is physically reigning on earth for a thousand years and not attempt to input potential symbolism into the text. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Final rebellion

This chapter describes a period of time after Jesus’ reign, known as the final rebellion. During this time, Satan and many people will attempt to rebel against Jesus. This will be God’s ultimate and final victory over sin and evil before eternity begins. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Great white throne

This is an important judgment in heaven after the final rebellion. During this judgment, people who have faith in God are separated from those who reject him. (See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [faith](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Hades and the Lake of Fire

These appear to be two distinct places. The translator may wish to do further research to determine how to differentiate these two places, but they should not be equated with each other in translation. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Links:

- **Revelation 20:01 Notes**

Revelation 20:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven. He had the key to the deep, dark pit, and he was carrying a large chain in his hand. ² He seized the dragon. That dragon is the ancient serpent, the devil, that is, Satan. The angel bound him with the chain. That chain could not be loosed for one thousand years. ³ The angel threw him into the deep, dark pit. He shut the door of the pit, locked it, and sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it. He did that in order that Satan might no longer deceive the people-groups until those one thousand years are ended. After that time, Satan must go free for a short time in order that he can do what God has planned.

ULB:

20 ¹ Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven. He had the key to the bottomless pit, and he had a great chain in his hand. ² He took hold of the dragon, the old serpent, which is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. ³ He threw him into the bottomless pit, he shut it and sealed it over him. This was so that he would not deceive the nations anymore until the thousand years were over. After that, he must be set free for a short amount of time.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- pit
- serpent, snake, viper
- Satan, devil, evil one
- seal, to seal
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- nation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe a vision of an angel throwing the devil into the bottomless pit.
- **Then I saw** - Here "I" refers to John.
- **bottomless pit** - This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [9:1](#).
- **dragon** - his was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

- **sealed it over him** - The angel sealed the pit to keep anyone from opening it. AT: “sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **deceive the nations** - Here “nations” is a metonym for the people of the earth. AT: “deceive the people-groups” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the thousand years** - “1,000 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **he must be set free** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will command the angel to free him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20:4

UDB:

⁴ I saw thrones on which people were sitting. God gave them authority to judge. I also saw the souls of other people whose heads had been cut off because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and had declared God's message. They were people who had refused to worship the beast or its image, and who had not allowed the beast's servants to put the beast's mark on them, either on their foreheads or on their hands. They became alive again, and they ruled with Christ during those one thousand years.

ULB:

⁴ Then I saw thrones. Seated on them were those who had been given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast or his image, and they had refused to receive the mark on their forehead or hand. They came to life, and they reigned with Christ for a thousand years.

translationWords:

- throne
- authority
- judge, judgment
- soul
- testimony, testify
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- worship
- beast
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- receive
- life, live, living, alive
- reign
- Christ, Messiah

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing thrones and the souls of believers.
- **who had been given authority to judge** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom God had given authority to judge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **who had been beheaded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whose heads others had cut off” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **for the testimony about Jesus** - “because they had spoken the truth about Jesus” (UDB)
- **They came to life** - “They came back to life” or “They became alive again” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20:5-6

UDB:

⁵ They were the ones who lived again the first time that God caused dead people to live again. The rest of the believers who had died did not live again until after those one thousand years. ⁶ God will be pleased with those who live again this first time. God will consider them holy. They will not die a second time. Instead, they will be priests who serve God and Christ, and they will rule with Christ during those one thousand years.

ULB:

⁵ The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended. This is the first resurrection. ⁶ Blessed and holy is anyone who takes part in the first resurrection! Over these the second death has no power. They will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with him for a thousand years.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- resurrection
- bless, blessed, blessing
- holy, holiness
- power, powers
- priest, priesthood
- Christ, Messiah
- reign

translationNotes:

- **The rest of the dead** - “All of the other dead people”
- **the thousand years were ended** - “the end of the 1,000 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Over these the second death has no power** - Here John describes “death” as a person with power. AT: “These people will not experience the second death” (See: [Personification](#))
- **the second death** - “dying a second time.” This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [20:14](#) and [21:08](#). AT: “the final death in the lake of fire.” See how you translated this in [2:11](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 20 Translation Questions

Revelation 20:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When the one thousand years are ended, God will release Satan from his prison. ⁸ Satan will go out to deceive the rebellious people groups all over the earth. These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog. Satan will gather them to fight against God's people. There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them, just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore.

ULB:

⁷ When the thousand years come to an end, Satan will be released from his prison. ⁸ He will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to bring them together for the battle. They will be as many as the sand of the sea.

translationWords:

- Satan, devil, evil one
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- nation

translationNotes:

- **Satan will be released from his prison** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will release Satan from his prison” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **at the four corners of the earth** - This is an idiom that means “all over the earth” (UDB). See how you translated this in [7:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Gog and Magog** - These are the names that the prophet Ezekiel used to represent faraway countries. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **They will be as many as the sand of the sea** - This emphasizes the extremely large number of soldiers in Satan's army. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20:9-10

UDB:

⁹ They will march over the whole earth and will surround the camp of God's people in Jerusalem, the city that God loves. Then God will send fire down from heaven, and it will burn them up. ¹⁰ God will throw the devil, who had deceived those people, into the lake of burning sulfur. This is also where God had thrown the beast and the false prophet. As a result, they will continually suffer severely forever.

ULB:

⁹ They went up over the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the believers, the beloved city. But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. ¹⁰ The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

translationWords:

- believer
- beloved
- fire
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- devour
- Satan, devil, evil one
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- hell, lake of fire
- sulfur
- beast
- false prophet
- forever

translationNotes:

- **They went** - "Satan's army went"
- **the beloved city** - This refers to Jerusalem.
- **fire came down from heaven and devoured them** - Here John speaks of fire as if it were alive. AT: "God sent fire from heaven to burn them up" (See: [Personification](#))
- **The devil, who deceived them, was thrown** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God threw the devil who had deceived them" or "God's angel threw the devil, who had deceived them," (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **lake of burning sulfur** - “the lake of fire that burns with sulfur” (UDB) or “place full of fire that burns with sulfur.” See how you translated this in [19:20](#).
- **where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “where he had also thrown the beast and the false prophet” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **They will be tormented** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will torment them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then I saw a huge white throne on which God was sitting. He was so fearsome that the earth and the sky disappeared from his presence completely; they were no more. ¹² I saw that the people who had died but now lived again were standing in front of the throne. They were both important and unimportant people! The books in which God records what people do were opened. Another book was also opened, which is the Book of Life in which God has written the names of people who have eternal life. God judged the people who had died and now lived again according to what they had done, just as he had recorded it in the books.

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw a great white throne and the one who is seated on it. The earth and the heaven fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go. ¹² I saw the dead—the mighty and the unimportant—standing before the throne, and the books were opened. Then another book was opened—The Book of Life. The dead were judged by what was recorded in the books, according to their deeds.

translationWords:

- throne
- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- death, die, dead
- mighty, might
- Book of Life
- judge, judgment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing a great white throne and the dead being judged.
- **The earth and the heaven fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go** - John describes heaven and earth as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth. (See: **Personification**)
- **the mighty and the unimportant** - John combines these opposite-meaning words to mean all of the dead people. (See: **Merism**)
- **the books were opened** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone opened the books" (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **The dead were judged** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God judged the people who had died and now lived again” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by what was recorded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “by what he had recorded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 20:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The people whose bodies were buried in the sea became alive again in order to stand before God's throne. Everyone who had been buried on the land became alive again also in order to stand before the throne. God judged each one of them according to what each one had done. ¹⁴ All the unbelievers—those who had been in the place where they waited after they died—were thrown into the burning lake. The burning lake is the place in which people die the second time. ¹⁵ God also threw the people whose names were not in the book, the book where God has written the names of the people who have eternal life, into the lake of fire.

ULB:

¹³ The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them, and the dead were judged according to what they had done. ¹⁴ Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death—the lake of fire. ¹⁵ If anyone's name was not found written in The Book of Life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- hades, sheol
- judge, judgment
- hell, lake of fire
- written
- Book of Life

translationNotes:

- **The sea gave up the dead ... Death and hades gave up the dead** - Here John speaks of the sea, death, and hades as if they were living persons. (See: [Personification](#))
- **the dead were judged** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God judged the dead people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Death and hades were thrown** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God threw death and hades" or "God's angel threw death and hades" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **hades** - Here "hades" is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the second death** - "dying a second time." This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [20:14](#) and [21:08](#). AT: "the final death in the lake of fire." See how you translated this in [2:11](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

- **If anyone's name was not found written** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "If God's angel did not find a person's name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he was thrown into the lake of fire** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the angel threw him into the lake of fire" or "the angel threw him into the place where fire burns forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

It is unclear why this chapter gives such attention to the details of the new Jerusalem.

Special concepts in this chapter

Second death

Death is a type of separation. The first death is a physical death, the separation of the soul from the body. The second death is the eternal separation from God. (See: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [soul](#) and [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

New heaven and new earth

It is unclear whether this is an entirely new heaven and earth or if it is remade out of the present heaven and earth. The same is also true of the new Jerusalem. It is possible this will affect translation in some languages.

Links:

- [Revelation 21:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 21:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth. The first heaven and the first earth had disappeared, and the oceans no longer existed. ² I saw God's holy city, which is the new city of Jerusalem. It was coming down out of heaven from God. God had prepared it and decorated it, just as women decorate a bride in order to marry a man.

ULB:

21 ¹ Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. ² I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, that came down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband.

translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [holy city](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [God](#)
- [bride](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John begins to describe his vision of the new Jerusalem.
- **I saw** - Here "I" refers to John.
- **like a bride adorned for her husband** - This compares the new Jerusalem to a bride, who makes herself beautiful for her bridegroom. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:3-4

UDB:

³ Then I heard someone near the throne of God speak in a loud voice. It said, "Listen to this! Now God will live with people. He will live right in the midst of them! They will be his people. God himself will be with them, and he will be their God. ⁴ He will cause them to be sad no longer. He will stop them from weeping ever again. None of them will ever again die or mourn or cry or suffer pain because the things that used to make them sad will have all passed away."

ULB:

³ I heard a great voice from the throne saying, "Look! The dwelling place of God is with human beings, and he will live with them. They will be his people, and God himself will be with them and he will be their God. ⁴ He will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and there will be no more death, or grieving, or crying, or pain. The former things have passed away.

translationWords:

- [voice](#)
- [throne](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **a great voice from the throne saying** - The word "voice" refers to the one who speaks. AT: "someone speak loudly from the throne saying" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Look!** - The word "Look" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **The dwelling place of God is with human beings, and he will live with them** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God will, indeed, live among men. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **He will wipe away every tear from their eyes** - Tears here represent sadness. AT: "God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore." See how you translated this in [7:17](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then God, who sits on the throne, said, “Listen to this! I am now making everything new!” He said to me: “Write these things that I have told you because you can trust that I will certainly cause them to happen.” ⁶ He also said to me, “I have completed all these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. To everyone who wants it, I will freely give water from the spring that causes people to live forever.

ULB:

⁵ The one who was seated on the throne said, “Look! I make all things new.” He said, “Write this down because these words are trustworthy and true.” ⁶ He said to me, “These things are done! I am the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end. To the one who thirsts I will give drink without cost from the spring of the water of life.

translationWords:

- word
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- true, truth, come true
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **these words are trustworthy and true** - Here “words” refers to the message that they formed. AT: “this message is trustworthy and true” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize God’s eternal nature. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#)).
- **the alpha and the omega** - These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) “the one who began all things and who ends all things” or 2) “the one who has always lived and who always will live”. If unclear to readers you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. AT: “the A and the Z” or “the first and the last.” See how you translated this in [1:8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))
- **the beginning and the end** - Possible meanings are 1) “the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end” (UDB) or 2) “the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things.”
- **To the one who thirsts ... water of life** - God speaks of a person’s desire for eternal life as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:7-8

UDB:

⁷ I will give this to all who are victorious over Satan. I will be their God, and they will be my children.
⁸ But those who are cowardly, those who do not believe in me, those who do detestable things, those who murder people, those who sin sexually, those who do witchcraft, those who worship idols, and every liar will all suffer in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur. That is what it means to die a second time.”

ULB:

⁷ The one who conquers will inherit these things, and I will be his God, and he will be my son. ⁸ But as for the cowards, the faithless, the detestable, the murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. That is the second death.”

translationWords:

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- son, son of
- faithless, faithlessness
- sexual immorality
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- idol, idolatrous
- hell, lake of fire
- sulfur
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The one seated on the throne continues to speak to John.
- **the cowards** - “those who are too afraid to do what is right”
- **the detestable** - “those who do terrible things”
- **the fiery lake of burning sulfur** - “the lake of fire that burns with sulfur” (UDB) or “place full of fire that burns with sulfur.” See how you translated this in [19:20](#).
- **the second death** - “dying a second time.” This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [20:14](#) and [21:08](#) . AT: “the final death in the lake of fire.” See how you translated this in [2:11](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls of wine—the wine that caused the seven last ways of suffering—came and said to me, “Come with me and I will show you the people who have permanently united with the Lamb as a woman marries a man!”

¹⁰ Then God’s Spirit took control of me, and the angel took me to the top of a very high mountain. He showed me God’s holy city, the new Jerusalem, which was coming down out of heaven from God.

ULB:

⁹ One of the seven angels came to me, the one who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues, and he said, “Come here. I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb.” ¹⁰ Then he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain and showed me the holy city Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- plague
- bride
- lamb, Lamb of God
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- holy city
- Jerusalem
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **the bride, the wife of the Lamb** - The angel speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a woman who is about to marry her groom, the Lamb. Jerusalem is metonymy for those who believers who will inhabit it. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **carried me away in the Spirit** - The setting changes as John is taken to a high mountain where he can see the city of Jerusalem. See how you translated this phrase in [17:3](#). (See: [Background Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ It was shining with the brilliant light that came from God himself. The city was shining as a very precious jasper stone shines, and it was clear like crystal. ¹² Around the city was a very high wall. The wall had twelve gates. An angel was at each gate. The names of the twelve tribes of Israel were written over the gates. Each gate had the name of one tribe. ¹³ Three gates were on the east side, three gates were on the north side, three gates were on the south side, and three gates were on the west side.

ULB:

¹¹ Jerusalem had the glory of God, and its brilliance was like a very precious jewel, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper. ¹² It had a great, high wall with twelve gates, with twelve angels at the gates. On the gates were written the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel. ¹³ On the east were three gates, on the north three gates, on the south three gates, and on the west three gates.

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- glory, glorious
- gate, gate bar
- angel, archangel
- name
- twelve tribes of Israel
- children, child
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **Jerusalem** - This refers to the “Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven” that he described in the previous verse and not to the physical Jerusalem.
- **like a very precious jewel, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the brilliance of Jerusalem by naming a specific jewel. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **crystal-clear** - “extremely clear”
- **jasper** - This is a valuable stone. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal. See how you translated this in [4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **twelve gates** - “12 gates” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **were written** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone had written” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The city wall had twelve foundation stones. On each foundation stone was the name of one of the twelve apostles whom the Lamb had appointed.

¹⁵ The angel who was speaking to me carried a golden measuring rod, a rod that he used to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.

ULB:

¹⁴ The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ¹⁵ The one who spoke with me had a measuring rod made of gold to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.

translationWords:

- [foundation, founded](#)
- [apostle, apostleship](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [rod](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **Lamb** - This refers to Jesus. See how you translated this in [5:6](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The city was square in shape; it was as long as it was wide. After the angel measured the city with his rod, he reported that it was 2,200 kilometers long, and that its width and height were each the same as its length. ¹⁷ He measured its wall and reported that it was sixty-six meters thick. The angel used the measure that people normally use.

ULB:

¹⁶ The city was laid out in a square; its length was the same as its width. He measured the city with the measuring rod, twelve thousand stadia in length (its length, width, and height were the same). ¹⁷ He also measured its wall, 144 cubits thick by human measurement (which is also the angel's measure).

translationWords:

- [rod](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)

translationNotes:

- **stadia** - A stadium measures 185 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **cubits** - A cubit measures 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ The city wall was made of something like the green stone that we call jasper. The city itself was made of pure gold that looked like clear glass. ¹⁹ The foundations of the wall of the city were beautifully made with precious stones. The first foundation stone was jasper stone, the second foundation stone was sapphire, the third foundation stone was chalcedony, the fourth foundation stone was emerald, ²⁰ the fifth foundation stone was sardonyx, the sixth foundation stone was sardius, the seventh foundation stone was chrysolite, the eighth foundation stone was beryl, the ninth foundation stone was topaz, the tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase, the eleventh foundation stone was jacinth, and the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst.

ULB:

¹⁸ The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold, like clear glass. ¹⁹ The foundations of the wall were adorned with every kind of precious stone. The first was jasper, the second was sapphire, the third was agate, the fourth was emerald, ²⁰ the fifth was onyx, the sixth was carnelian, the seventh was chrysolite, the eighth was beryl, the ninth was topaz, the tenth was chrysoprase, the eleventh was jacinth, and the twelfth was amethyst.

translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- gold
- foundation, founded

translationNotes:

- **The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone had built the wall with jasper and the city with pure gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **pure gold, like clear glass** - The gold was so clear that it is spoken of as if it was glass. (See: [Simile](#))
- **The foundations of the wall were adorned** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone adorned the foundations of the wall” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **jasper ... emerald ... carnelian** - These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red. Emeralds are green. See how you translated these in [4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **sapphire ... agate ... onyx ... chrysolite ... beryl ... topaz ... chrysoprase ... jacinth ... amethyst** - These are all precious gems. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The twelve gates of the city were something like huge pearls. Each gate was like a single pearl. The city streets appeared to be pure gold that looked like clear glass.

²² There was no temple in the city. The Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb are there, so there was no need for a temple.

ULB:

²¹ The twelve gates were twelve pearls; each of the gates was made from a single pearl. The streets of the city were pure gold, like transparent glass. ²² I saw no temple in the city, for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- pure, purify, purification
- gold
- temple
- Lord
- Almighty
- lamb, Lamb of God

translationNotes:

- **pearls** - beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **each of the gates was made from a single pearl** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone had made each of the gates from a single pearl” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **pure gold, like transparent glass** - The gold was so clear that it is spoken of as if it was glass. See how you translated a similar phrase in [21:18](#). (See: [Simile](#))
- **Lord God ... and the Lamb are its temple** - The temple represented God’s presence. This means the new Jerusalem does not need a temple because God and the Lamb will live there. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 21 General Notes
- **Revelation 21 Translation Questions**

Revelation 21:23-25

UDB:

²³ The city will not need the sun or the moon to light the city because the light coming from God will light the city, and the Lamb will also be its light. ²⁴ The people groups will live with the light of the city shining on them. The kings of the earth will bring their wealth into the city to honor God and the lamb. ²⁵ The gates of the city will not be shut at the end of the day as they usually are shut because there will be no night there.

ULB:

²³ The city had no need of the sun or the moon in order to shine on it because the glory of God shone on it, and its lamp is the Lamb. ²⁴ The nations will walk by the light of that city. The kings of the earth will bring their splendor into it.[1]Some older copies read, *The nations that are saved will walk by the light of that city.* ²⁵ Its gates will not be shut during the day, and there will be no night there.

translationWords:

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [nation](#)
- [walk](#)
- [light](#)
- [king](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)

translationNotes:

- **its lamp is the Lamb** - Here the glory of Jesus, the Lamb, is spoken of as if it were a lamp that gives light to the city. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Its gates will not be shut** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one will shut the gates” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 21:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ The people of the world will also bring their wealth into the city. ²⁷ Nothing that is morally impure, no one who does deeds that God considers detestable, and no one who tells lies will ever enter that city. Only those people whose names are written in the book that belongs to the lamb, the book that has the names of people who have eternal life, will be there.

ULB:

²⁶ They will bring the splendor and the honor of the nations into it, ²⁷ and nothing unclean will ever enter into it. Neither will anyone who commits anything shameful or deceitful enter, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life.

translationWords:

- splendor
- honor, to honor
- nation
- unclean
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- lamb, Lamb of God
- Book of Life

translationNotes:

- **They will bring** - "The kings of the earth will bring"
- **nothing unclean will ever enter** - These two negative words can be expressed in a positive way by saying "only what is clean will ever enter." (See: [Double Negatives](#))
- **but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "but only those whose names the Lamb wrote in his Book of Life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter emphasizes that the prophecies of the book of Revelation are going to take place soon.

(See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

River of Life

There is probably an intended a connection between the tree of life in the Garden of Eden and the tree of life mentioned here. The curse which began in Eden, will end at this time.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Alpha and omega

These are the names of the first and last Greek letters. The ULB does not “translate” these words into English but chooses to “transliterate” or transfer them into English by substituting English letters for Greek letters. The translator should try to form the sounds of this phrase without translating their meaning.

Links:

- [Revelation 22:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 22:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then the angel showed me the river that causes people who drink from it to live forever. The water was sparkling and clear like crystal. The river was flowing out from the throne where God and the Lamb were sitting. ² It flowed down through the middle of the main street of the city. On each side of the river were trees with fruit that causes people who eat it to live forever. The trees bear twelve kinds of fruit; they produce one crop each month. The people groups use the leaves of the trees as medicine in order that their wounds may heal.

ULB:

22 ¹ Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, clear as crystal. It was flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb ² through the middle of the city's street. On each side of the river was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruits, and it bears its fruit every month. The leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations.

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- life, live, living, alive
- throne
- God
- lamb, Lamb of God
- heal, cure
- nation

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - John continues to describe the new Jerusalem as the angel shows it to him.
- **showed me** - Here “me” refers to John.
- **the river of the water of life** - “the river flowing with life-giving water”
- **the water of life** - Eternal life is spoken of as if it were a drink of life-giving water. See how you translated this in 21:6. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the Lamb** - This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in 5:6. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **the nations** - Here “nations” refers to the people who live in every nation. AT: “the people of all nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:3-5**UDB:**

³ There will never be anyone or anything there that God will curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city. God's servants will worship him there. ⁴ They will see him face to face, and his name will be written on their foreheads. ⁵ There will never again be night. God's servants will not need the light of a lamp or the light of the sun because the Lord God will shine his light upon them. They will rule forever.

ULB:

³ There will no longer be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will serve him. ⁴ They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. ⁵ There will be no more night; they will have no need for the light of a lamp or sunlight because the Lord God will shine on them. They will reign forever and ever.

translationWords:

- curse, cursed
- throne
- lamb, Lamb of God
- servant, slave, slavery
- serve, service
- face
- name
- lamp
- Lord
- reign
- forever

translationNotes:

- **There will no longer be any curse** - Possible meanings are 1) "There will never be anyone ... there that God will curse" (UDB) or 2) "There will not be anyone there who is under God's curse."
- **his servants will serve him** - Possible meanings of "his" and "him" are 1) both words refer to God the Father, or 2) both words refer to both God and the Lamb, who rule together as one.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:6-7

UDB:

⁶ The angel said to me: “These things that God has shown you are true, and he will certainly make them happen. The Lord God who inspires the prophets sent his angel to show the people who serve him the events that must happen soon.” ⁷ Jesus says to all his people, “Listen to this! I am coming soon; God will abundantly bless everyone who obeys the message that has been written in this book.”

ULB:

⁶ The angel said to me, “These words are trustworthy and true. The Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, sent his angel to show his servants what must happen soon.” ⁷ “Look! I am coming soon! Blessed is the one who obeys the words of the prophecy of this book.”

translationWords:

- angel, archangel
- word
- true, truth, come true
- Lord
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- bless, blessed, blessing
- obey, obedient, obedience

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the end of John’s vision. In verse 6 the angel is speaking to John. In verse 7, Jesus is speaking, as is stated in the UDB.
- **These words are trustworthy and true** - Here “words” refers to the message that they formed. AT: “This message is trustworthy and true.” See how you translated this in [21:5](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the God of the spirits of the prophets** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “spirits” refers to the inward disposition of the prophets and indicates that God inspires them. AT: “God who inspires the prophets” (UDB) or 2) the word “spirits” refers to the Holy Spirit who inspires the prophets. AT: “God who gives his Spirit to the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Look!** - Here Jesus begins to speak. The word “Look” adds emphasis to what follows.

- **I am coming soon!** - It is understood that he is coming in order to judge. AT: “I am coming to judge soon!” See how you translated this in [3:11](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:8-9

UDB:

⁸ I, John, am the one who heard and saw in a vision these things that I have written down. When I had heard and seen them, I immediately lay down in front of the angel who had shown me these things in order to worship him. ⁹ But he said to me, “Do not worship me! I am just a servant of God like you! I am also a servant like your fellow believers who are the prophets, and like those who obey the message in this book. Instead, worship God!”

ULB:

⁸ I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. When I heard and saw them, I prostrated myself before the feet of the angel to worship him, the angel who showed me these things. ⁹ He said to me, “Do not do that! I am a fellow servant with you, with your brothers the prophets, and with those who obey the words of this book. Worship God!”

translationWords:

- [John \(the apostle\)](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [worship](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [brother](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John tells his readers about how he responded to the angel.
- **prostrated** - This means to lie on the ground and stretch oneself out in reverence or submission. This position was an important part of worship, to show respect and willingness to serve.

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ He also said to me, "Do not keep secret the message about what God has foretold in this book because it is almost time for him to fulfill this message. ¹¹ Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way, let them continue to do so. God will soon pay them back for that. If those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so. God will soon pay them back for that. Those who are acting righteously should continue to act righteously. Those who are perfect should continue to be perfect."

ULB:

¹⁰ He said to me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near. ¹¹ The one who is unrighteous, let him continue to do unrighteousness. The one who is morally filthy, let him continue to be morally filthy. The one who is righteous, let him continue to do what is righteous. The one who is holy, let him continue to be holy."

translationWords:

- seal, to seal
- word
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- unrighteous, unrighteousness
- righteous, righteousness
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The angel finishes speaking to John.
- **Do not seal up ... this book** - To seal a book was to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible for anyone to read what was inside without breaking the seal. The angel is telling John not to keep the message a secret. AT: "Do not keep secret ... this book" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the words of the prophecy of this book** - Here "words" refers to the message that they formed. AT: "This prophetic message of this book." See how you translated this in [22:7](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 22 General Notes
- **Revelation 22 Translation Questions**

Revelation 22:12-13

UDB:

¹² Jesus says to all people: "Listen! I am coming soon! And I will pay back and punish or reward everyone according to what each one has done. ¹³ I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things.

ULB:

¹² "Look! I am coming soon. My reward is with me, to pay back each one according to what he has done. ¹³ I am the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.

translationWords:

- [reward](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - As the book of Revelation is ending, Jesus gives a closing greeting. (See: [End of Story](#))
- **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end** - These three phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that Jesus has and will exist for all time. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#)).
- **the alpha and the omega** - These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live". If unclear to readers you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. AT: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last." See how you translated this in [1:8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))
- **the first and the last** - This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [1:17](#). (See: [Merism](#))
- **the beginning and the end** - Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end" (UDB) or 2) "the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things." See how you translated this in [21:6](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ God is very pleased with the people who wash their robes and make them clean because they will be able to eat the fruit of the tree that enables people to live forever and because they will be able to enter the gates into the holy city. ¹⁵ Outside are people who are unholy. They include people who practice witchcraft, people who sin sexually, people who murder others, idol worshipers, and all people who enjoy telling lies and are continual liars. They can never enter that city.”

ULB:

¹⁴ Blessed are those who wash their robes so that they will have the right to eat from the tree of life and to enter the city through the gates.[1]Instead of, *Blessed are those who wash their robes*, some older copies read, *Blessed are those who do his commandments*. ¹⁵ Outside are the dogs, the sorcerers, the sexually immoral, the murderers, the idolaters, and everyone who loves and practices falsehood.

translationWords:

- bless, blessed, blessing
- robe
- life, live, living, alive
- gate, gate bar
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- sexual immorality
- idol, idolatrous
- love

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Jesus continues giving his closing greeting.
- **those who wash their robes** - Becoming righteous is spoken of as if it were washing one’s clothing. See how you translated as similar phrase in [7:14](#). AT: “those who have become righteous, as if they have washed their robes” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Outside** - This means they are outside the city and not allowed to enter.
- **are the dogs** - In that culture the dog was an unclean, despised animal. Here the word is derogatory and refers to people who are wicked. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:16

UDB:

¹⁶ “I, Jesus, sent my angel in order that he might say to you people who are the groups of believers that all these things are true. I am the descendant of King David whom the prophets promised would come. I am the one who is like the bright morning star.”

ULB:

¹⁶ I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify to you about these things for the churches. I am the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star.”

translationWords:

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [testimony, testify](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **to testify to you** - Here the word “you” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **the root and the descendant of David** - The words “root” and “descendant” mean basically the same thing. Jesus speaks of being a “descendant” as if he were a “root” that grew out of David. Together the words emphasize that Jesus belongs to the family of David. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#)).
- **the bright morning star** - Jesus speaks of himself as if he were the bright star that appears early in the morning and indicates that a new day is about to begin. See how you translated “morning star” in [2:28](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:17

UDB:

¹⁷ God's Spirit and his people, who are like the bride of Christ, say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" Whoever hears this should also say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" The people who want to come should come! Everyone who desires the water that enables people to live forever should take it as a free gift!

ULB:

¹⁷ The Spirit and the Bride say, "Come!" Let the one who hears say, "Come!" Whoever is thirsty, let him come, and whoever desires it, let him freely have the water of life.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [bride](#)
- [free, freedom, liberty](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This verse is a response to what Jesus said.
- **the Bride** - Believers are spoken of as if they were a bride about to be married to her groom, Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Come!** - Possible meanings are 1) that this is an invitation for people to come and drink the water of life. AT: "Come and drink!" or 2) that this is a polite request for Jesus to return. AT: "Please come!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Whoever is thirsty ... the water of life** - A person's desire for eternal life is spoken of as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the water of life** - Eternal life is spoken of as if it were a drink of life-giving water. See how you translated this in [21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ I, John, solemnly warn everyone who hears the message about what I have foretold in this book: If anyone adds anything to this message, God will punish him in the ways that this book tells about.

¹⁹ If anyone takes away any of the message about what I have foretold in this book, God will take away that person's right to eat fruit from the tree that enables people to live forever. He will also take away that person's right to enter God's city. Both these things are described in this book.

ULB:

¹⁸ I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to them, God will add to him the plagues that are written about in this book. ¹⁹ If anyone takes away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city that are written about in this book.[1]Some older copies read, *God will take away his share in The Book of Life and in the holy city that are written about in this book.*

translationWords:

- testimony, testify
- word
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- plague
- holy city

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - John gives his final remarks about the book of Revelation.
- **I testify** - Here "I" refers to John.
- **the words of the prophecy of this book** - Here "words" refers to the message that they formed. AT: "This prophetic message of this book." See how you translated this in [22:7](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **If anyone adds to them ... If anyone takes away** - This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.
- **that are written about in this book** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "which I have written about in this book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- Revelation 22 General Notes
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

Revelation 22:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Jesus, who says that all these things are true, says, “Certainly I am coming soon!” I, John, reply, “May it be so! Lord Jesus, come!”

²¹ I pray that our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to all of you who are God’s people. Amen!

ULB:

²⁰ The one who testifies to these things says, “Yes! I am coming soon.” Amen! Come, Lord Jesus!

²¹ May the grace of the Lord Jesus be with everyone. Amen.

translationWords:

- [testimony, testify](#)
- [amen, truly](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses John gives his and Jesus’ closing greetings.
- **The one who testifies** - “Jesus, who testifies”
- **everyone** - “every one of you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Revelation 1

Q? From whom did this revelation first come, and to whom is the revelation being shown?

A. The revelation of Jesus Christ came from God, and is being shown to his servants. [1:1]

Q? When would the events of the revelation take place?

A. The events of the revelation would take place soon. [1:1]

Q? Who will be blessed by this book?

A. Those who read aloud, hear, and obey this book will be blessed. [1:3]

Q? Who wrote this book, and to whom did he write?

A. John wrote this book, and he wrote to the seven churches in Asia. [1:4]

Q? What three titles does John give to Jesus Christ?

A. John gives Jesus Christ the titles of faithful witness, firstborn of the dead, and ruler of the kings of the earth. [1:5]

Q? What has Jesus made the believers?

A. Jesus has made the believers a kingdom and priests to God the Father. [1:6]

Q? Who will see Jesus when he comes?

A. Every eye will see Jesus when he comes, including those who pierced him. [1:7]

Q? How does the Lord God describe himself?

A. The Lord God describes himself as the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty. [1:8]

Q? Why was John on the island of Patmos?

A. John was on the island of Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony about Jesus. [1:9]

Q? What did the loud voice behind John tell him to do?

A. The loud voice told John to write in a book what he saw and send it to the seven churches. [1:11]

Q? What kind of hair and eyes did the man have who John saw?

A. The man John saw had hair as white as wool, and eyes like a fiery flame. [1:14]

Q? What was in the right hand of the man, and what was coming out of his mouth?

A. The man had seven stars in his right hand, and a sharp two-edged sword coming out of his mouth. [1:16]

Q? What did John do when he saw the man?

A. John fell at the man's feet like a dead man. [1:17]

Q? What keys did the man say he had?

A. The man said he had the keys of Death and of Hades. [1:18]

Q? What was the meaning of the seven stars and the seven golden lampstands?

A. The seven stars were the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands were the seven churches. [1:20]

Revelation 2

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Ephesus. [2:1]

Q? What has the church in Ephesus done regarding those who are evil and regarding the false prophets?

A. The church in Ephesus has not put up with those who are evil and has tested the false prophets. [2:2]

Q? What does Christ have against the church in Ephesus?

A. Christ has against the church in Ephesus that they have left behind their first love. [2:4]

Q? What does Christ say he will do if they do not repent?

A. Christ says he will come and remove their lampstand from its place if they do not repent. [2:5]

Q? What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

A. Christ promises that those who conquer will eat from the tree of life in the paradise of God. [2:7]

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Smyrna. [2:8]

Q? What has the church in Smyrna experienced?

A. The church in Smyrna has experienced sufferings, poverty, and slander. [2:9]

Q? What does Christ promise to those who are faithful until death and who conquer?

A. Christ promises that those who are faithful until death and conquer will receive the crown of life and will not be hurt by the second death. [2:10-11]

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Pergamum. [02:12]

Q? Where does the church in Pergamum live?

A. The church in Pergamum lives where Satan's throne is. [2:13]

Q? What did the church in Pergamum do in the days when Antipas was killed?

A. The church in Pergamum held tightly to Christ's name and did not deny the faith in the days when Antipas was killed. [2:13]

Q? To what two teachings have some in the church in Pergamum held?

A. Some in the church in Pergamum have held to the teachings of Balaam and to the teachings of the Nicolaitans. [2:14-15]

Q? What does Christ warn he will do if those who hold to these false teachings do not repent?

A. Christ warns he will come and make war against those who hold to these false teachings. [2:16]

Q? What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

A. Christ promises that those who conquer will eat the hidden manna and will receive a white stone with a new name. [2:17]

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Thyatira. [02:18]

Q? What good things does Christ know the church in Thyatira has done?

A. Christ knows the church in Thyatira has shown love, faith, service, and patient endurance. [2:19]

Q? What does Christ have against the church in Thyatira?

A. Christ has against the church in Thyatira that they tolerate the immoral false prophetess Jezebel. [2:20]

Q? What does Christ warn he will do if Jezebel does not repent?

A. Christ warns that he will throw Jezebel into a sickbed and strike her children dead if she does not repent. [2:22-23]

Q? What does Christ tell those who have not held to the teaching of Jezebel to do?

A. Christ tells them to hold on tightly until he comes. [2:25]

Q? What does Christ promise those who conquer?

A. Christ promises those who conquer authority over the nations and the morning star. [02:26,28]

Q? To what does Christ say the reader of this book should listen?

A. Christ says the reader should listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. [2:29]

Revelation 3

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Sardis. [3:1]

Q? What is the reputation of the church in Sardis, but what is the truth about them?

A. The reputation of the church in Sardis is that they are alive, but the truth is that they are dead. [3:1]

Q? What does Christ warn the church in Sardis to do?

A. Christ warns them to wake up and strengthen what remains. [3:2]

Q? What does Christ promise those who conquer?

A. Those who conquer will be clothed in white, will remain in the book of life, and will have their name spoken before God the Father. [3:5]

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Philadelphia. [3:7]

Q? What has the church in Philadelphia done even though they have little strength?

A. The church in Philadelphia has obeyed Christ's word and has not denied his name. [3:8]

Q? What will Christ make those of the synagogue of Satan do?

A. Christ will make those of the synagogue of Satan bow down before the saints' feet. [3:9]

Q? What does Christ tell the church of Philadelphia to do since he is coming soon?

A. Christ tells them to hold tight to what they have so no one can take away their crown. [3:11]

Q? What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

A. Those who conquer will be a pillar in the temple of God, will have the name of God, the name of the city of God, and Christ's new name written on them. [3:12]

Q? To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

A. The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Laodicea. [3:14]

Q? What does Christ wish the church in Laodicea was?

A. Christ wishes the church in Laodicea was either cold or hot. [3:15]

Q? What is Christ about to do to the church in Laodicea, and why?

A. Christ is about to vomit the church in Laodicea out of his mouth because they are lukewarm. [3:16]

Q? What does the church in Laodicea say about itself?

A. The church in Laodicea says that it is rich and in need of nothing. [3:17]

Q? What does Christ say about the church in Laodicea?

A. Christ says the church in Laodicea is miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked. [3:17]

Q? What does Christ do for everyone he loves?

A. Christ trains and teaches everyone he loves. [3:19]

Q? What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

A. Those who conquer will sit with Christ on his throne. [3:21]

Q? To whom does Christ say the reader of the book should listen?

A. Christ says the reader should listen to what the Spirit says to the churches. [3:22]

Revelation 4

Q? What did John see opened?

A. John saw a door opened in heaven. [4:1]

Q? What did the voice say he would show John?

A. The voice said he would show John what must happen after these things. [4:1]

Q? What was someone sitting on in heaven?

A. Someone was sitting on a throne in heaven. [4:2]

Q? What was around the throne in heaven?

A. Around the throne were twenty-four thrones with twenty-four elders seated on them. [4:4]

Q? What were the seven lamps burning in front of the throne?

A. The seven lamps were the seven Spirits of God. [4:5]

Q? What four things were around the throne?

A. Four living creatures were around the throne. [4:6]

Q? What three words do the four living creatures repeat night and day?

A. Night and day the four living creatures do not stop saying, "Holy, holy, holy." [4:8]

Q? What do the twenty-four elders do when the living creatures give glory to God?

A. The twenty-four elders prostrate themselves before the throne and bow down, throwing down their crowns. [4:10]

Q? What do the elders say about God's role in creation?

A. The elders say God created all things and by his will all things existed and were created. [4:11]

Revelation 5

Q? What did John see in the right hand of the one seated on the throne?

A. John saw a scroll sealed with seven seals. [5:1]

Q? Who on the earth was worthy to open the scroll or read it?

A. No one was worthy to open the scroll or read it. [5:3-4]

Q? Who was able to open the scroll and its seven seals?

A. The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, was able to open the scroll. [5:5]

Q? Who was standing among the elders before the throne?

A. A Lamb, looking as though he had been killed, was standing among the elders before the throne. [5:6]

Q? What were the seven horns and seven eyes on the Lamb?

A. The seven horns and seven eyes were the seven Spirits of God sent out over all the earth. [5:6]

Q? What were the gold bowls full of incense which the elders had?

A. The gold bowls full of incense were the prayers of the saints. [5:8]

Q? Why was the Lamb worthy to open the scroll?

A. The Lamb was worthy because he purchased for God people from every tribe, language, people, and nation with his blood. [5:9]

Q? Where will the priests of God reign?

A. The priests of God will reign on the earth. [5:10]

Q? What did the angels say the Lamb was worthy to receive?

A. The angels said the Lamb was worthy to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise. [5:12]

Q? Who said that the one on the throne and the Lamb should be praised forever and ever?

A. Every created thing said that the one on the throne and the Lamb should be praised forever and ever. [5:13]

Q? What did the elders do when they heard the four living creatures say, "Amen!"?

A. The elders laid down on the ground and worshiped. [5:14]

Revelation 6

Q? What did the Lamb do with the scroll?

A. The Lamb opened one of the seven seals on the scroll. [6:1]

Q? What did John see after the first seal was opened?

A. John saw a white horse, with a rider going out to conquer. [6:2]

Q? What did John see after the second seal was opened?

A. John saw a fiery red horse, whose rider took peace away from the earth. [6:4]

Q? What did John see after the third seal was opened?

A. John saw a black horse, whose rider held a pair of scales in his hand. [6:5]

Q? What did John see after the fourth seal was opened?

A. John saw a pale horse, whose rider was named Death. [6:8]

Q? What did John see after the fifth seal was opened?

A. John saw the souls of those who had been killed because of the word of God. [6:9]

Q? What did the souls under the altar want to know from God?

A. The souls wanted to know how long until God avenged their blood. [6:10]

Q? How long were the souls told they would have to wait?

A. The souls were told they would have to wait until the full number of fellow servants were killed. [6:11]

Q? What did John see after the sixth seal was opened?

A. John saw an earthquake, the sun becoming black, the moon becoming like blood, and the stars falling to the earth. [6:12-13]

Q? What did John see the kings, generals, rich, powerful, and everyone else doing?

A. John saw them hiding in caves and asking the rocks to fall on them and hide them. [6:15-16]

Q? From what did the kings, generals, rich, powerful, and everyone else want to be hid?

A. They wanted to be hid from the one seated on the throne and from the anger of the Lamb. [6:16]

Q? What day had come?

A. The great day of the wrath of the one on the throne and the Lamb had come. [6:17]

Revelation 7

Q? What were the four angels standing on the four corners of the earth doing when John saw them?

A. The four angels were holding back the four winds of the earth. [7:1]

Q? What did the angel from the east say must be done before the earth was harmed?

A. The angel said that a seal must be put on the foreheads of the servants of God before the earth was harmed. [7:2-3]

Q? How many people from what tribe were sealed?

A. The number of people sealed was 144,000 from every tribe of the people of Israel. [7:4]

Q? What did John then see before the throne of God and in front of the Lamb?

A. John saw a great multitude from every nation, tribe, people, and language before the throne. [7:9]

Q? According to those before the throne, to whom does salvation belong?

A. Those before the throne called out that salvation belongs to God and to the Lamb. [7:10]

Q? In what bodily position were the angels, elders, and living creatures as they worshiped God?

A. They laid down on the ground and put their faces on the ground as they worshiped God. [7:11]

Q? Who did the elder say were the ones clothed in white robes before the throne?

A. The elder said they were the ones who had come out of the Great Tribulation. [7:14]

Q? How had the ones before the throne made their robes white?

A. They had made their robes white by washing them in the blood of the Lamb. [7:14]

Q? What did the elder say God would do for those who are clothed in white robes?

A. God will spread his tent over them so they will suffer no more. [7:15-16]

Q? What did the elder say the Lamb would do for those who are clothed in white robes?

A. The Lamb will shepherd them and guide them to springs of living water. [7:17]

Revelation 8

Q? What caused there to be silence in heaven?

A. When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven. [8:1]

Q? What was given to the seven angels who stand before God?

A. Seven trumpets were given to the seven angels who stand before God. [8:2]

Q? What rose up before God?

A. The smoke of incense with the prayers of the saints rose up before God. [8:4]

Q? What happened when the angel threw down to earth the fire from the altar?

A. When the angel threw down the fire, there was thunder, rumblings, lightning, and an earthquake. [8:5]

Q? What happened when the first trumpet was blown?

A. When the first trumpet was blown, a third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees, and all grass. [8:7]

Q? What happened when the second trumpet was blown?

A. When the second trumpet was blown, a third of the sea became blood, a third of the creatures of the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed. [8:8-9]

Q? What happened when the third trumpet was blown?

A. When the third trumpet was blown, a third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died. [8:10-11]

Q? What happened when the fourth trumpet was blown?

A. When the fourth trumpet was blown, a third of the day and a third of the night had no light. [8:12]

Q? Why did the eagle say “Woe, woe, woe” to those on the earth?

A. The eagle said, “Woe, woe, woe” to those on the earth because of the remaining three trumpet blasts. [8:13]

Revelation 9

Q? What kind of star did John see when the fifth trumpet was blown?

A. When the fifth trumpet was blown, John saw a star from heaven that had fallen to earth. [9:1]

Q? What did the star do?

A. The star opened the shaft of the deep and endless pit. [9:2]

Q? What were the locusts from the pit told to do?

A. The locusts were told not to damage the earth, but only the people who did not have the seal of God. [9:3-4]

Q? What would the people tortured by the locusts seek but not find?

A. The people tortured by the locusts would seek death, but would not find it. [9:6]

Q? What sound did the wings of the locusts make?

A. The sound of the locusts' wings was like the sound made by many chariots and horses running into battle. [9:9]

Q? Who was the king over the locusts?

A. The king over the locusts was Abaddon, or in Greek, Apollyon, the angel of the pit. [9:11]

Q? What was past after the fifth trumpet was blown?

A. The first woe was past after the fifth trumpet was blown. [9:12]

Q? What voice did John hear when the sixth trumpet was blown?

A. When the sixth trumpet was blown, John heard a voice coming from the golden altar that is present before God. [9:13]

Q? What did the four angels do when they heard the voice?

A. When they heard the voice, the four angels were released to kill a third of humanity. [9:15]

Q? How many soldiers on horseback did John see?

A. John saw 200,000,000 soldiers on horseback. [9:16]

Q? What plagues killed a third of the people?

A. The plagues of fire, smoke, and sulfur from the mouths of the horses killed a third of the people. [9:18]

Q? How did the people not killed by the plagues respond?

A. The people not killed by the plagues did not repent of their works, nor did they stop worshiping demons. [9:20]

Revelation 10

Q? What did the face and feet of the mighty angel that John saw look like?

A. The angel had a face like the sun and feet like pillars of fire. [10:1]

Q? Where did the angel stand?

A. The angel stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land. [10:2]

Q? What was John told not to write?

A. John was told not to write what the seven thunders said. [10:4]

Q? By whom did the mighty angel swear?

A. The mighty angel swore by him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven, the earth, and the sea. [10:6]

Q? What did the mighty angel say would no longer be delayed?

A. The angel said that when the seventh trumpet was blown, there would be no more delay, but the mystery of God would be accomplished. [10:7]

Q? What was John told to take from the mighty angel?

A. John was told to take an open scroll from the angel. [10:8]

Q? What did the angel say would happen when John ate the scroll?

A. The angel said that the scroll would be sweet in John's mouth, but bitter in his stomach. [10:9]

Q? After he ate the scroll, about what was John told to prophesy?

A. John was told to prophesy about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings. [10:11]

Revelation 11

Q? What was John told to measure?

A. John was told to measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it. [11:1]

Q? How long would the Gentiles trample the holy city?

A. The Gentiles would trample the holy city for forty-two months. [11:2]

Q? What were the two witnesses given authority to do to those who choose to harm them?

A. The two witnesses were given authority to kill their enemies with fire. [11:5]

Q? Where will the bodies of the two witnesses lie?

A. Their bodies will lie in the street of the city symbolically called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was crucified. [11:8]

Q? How will the people of the earth react when the two witnesses are killed?

A. The people of the earth will rejoice and celebrate when the two witnesses are killed. [11:10]

Q? What will happen to the two witnesses after three and a half days?

A. After three and a half days, the two witnesses will stand on their feet and go up to heaven. [11:11-12]

Q? After the two witnesses and the earthquake are finished, what is past?

A. After the two witnesses and the earthquake, the second woe is past. [11:14]

Q? When the seventh trumpet was blown, what was spoken in heaven?

A. When the seventh trumpet was blown, it was spoken that the kingdom of the world had become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ. [11:15]

Q? What did the elders say that the Lord God had now begun to do?

A. The elders said that the Lord God had now begun to reign. [11:17]

Q? According to the elders, what time had now come?

A. The time had now come for the dead to be judged, for God's servants to be rewarded, and for God to destroy those who were destroying the earth. [11:18]

Q? What was then opened in heaven?

A. God's temple was then opened in heaven. [11:19]

Revelation 12

Q? What great sign was seen in heaven?

A. In heaven was seen a pregnant woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet, and with twelve stars on her head crying out in birth pains. [12:1-2]

Q? What other great sign was seen in heaven?

A. In heaven was seen a huge red dragon with seven heads and ten horns, with seven crowns on his heads. [12:3]

Q? What did the dragon do with his tail?

A. The dragon swept away a third of the stars in heaven and hurled them down to earth. [12:4]

Q? What did the dragon desire to do?

A. The dragon desired to devour the child of the woman. [12:4]

Q? What was the male child going to do?

A. The male child was going to rule all the nations with an iron rod. [12:5]

Q? Where did the male child go?

A. The male child was snatched away to God and to his throne. [12:5]

Q? Where did the woman go?

A. The woman fled into the wilderness. [12:6]

Q? Who fought in heaven?

A. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon and his angels. [12:7]

Q? What happened to the dragon and his angels after the battle?

A. The dragon and his angels were thrown down to the earth. [12:9]

Q? Who is the dragon?

A. The dragon is the old serpent, the devil, or Satan. [12:9]

Q? How did the brothers conquer the dragon?

A. The brothers conquered the dragon by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony. [12:11]

Q? How much time does the dragon know he has?

A. The dragon knows he has only a little time. [12:12]

Q? What was done for the woman when the dragon pursued her?

A. The woman was given wings to fly to the place prepared for her where she would be taken care of. [12:13-14]

Q? When the dragon could not sweep away the woman, what did the dragon do?

A. The dragon went off to make war with those who obey God's commandments and who hold to the testimony about Jesus. [12:15-17]

Revelation 13

Q? From where did the beast come that John saw?

A. The beast came up out of the sea. [13:1]

Q? What did the dragon give to the beast?

A. The dragon gave to the beast his power, a throne, and authority to rule. [13:2]

Q? Why did the whole earth marvel and follow the beast?

A. The whole earth marveled and followed the beast because he had a lethal wound that had been healed. [13:3]

Q? What did the beast speak with his mouth?

A. The beast spoke proud words and insults against God, his name, the place where he lived, and those who live in heaven. [13:5-6]

Q? What was the beast permitted to do with the holy people?

A. The beast was permitted to make war with the holy people and to conquer them. [13:7]

Q? Who will not worship the beast?

A. Those whose name is written in the book of life will not worship the beast. [13:8]

Q? To what are those who are holy called?

A. Those who are holy are called to patient endurance and faith. [13:10]

Q? From where did the other beast come that John saw?

A. The other beast came up out of the earth. [13:11]

Q? What kind of horns and speaking did the other beast have?

A. The other beast had horns like a lamb and spoke like a dragon. [13:11]

Q? What did the other beast cause those who live on the earth to do?

A. The other beast caused those who live on the earth to worship the first beast. [13:12]

Q? What happened to those who refused to worship the beast?

A. Those who refused to worship the beast were killed. [13:15]

Q? What did everyone receive from the other beast?

A. Everyone received a mark on the right hand or on the forehead. [13:16]

Q? What is the number of the beast?

A. The number of the beast is 666. [13:18]

Revelation 14

Q? Who did John see standing before him?

A. John saw the Lamb standing before him on Mount Zion. [14:1]

Q? Who was able to learn the new song being sung before the throne?

A. Only the 144,000 who had been redeemed from the earth were able to learn the new song. [14:3]

Q? Who was redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb?

A. The 144,000 who were blameless were redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb. [14:4-5]

Q? To whom did the angel give the eternal message of good news?

A. The angel gave the eternal message of good news to every nation, tribe, language, and people on the earth. [14:6]

Q? What did the angel tell those who live on the earth to do?

A. The angel told them to fear God and to give him glory. [14:7]

Q? What time did the angel say had come?

A. The angel said the hour of God's judgment had come. [14:7]

Q? What did the second angel announce?

A. The second angel announced that Babylon the great had fallen. [14:8]

Q? What did the third angel say would happen to those who received the mark of the beast?

A. Those who received the mark of the beast would be tormented with fire and sulfur. [14:10]

Q? To what were the saints called?

A. The saints were called to patient endurance. [14:12]

Q? Who did John see seated on the cloud?

A. John saw one like a Son of Man seated on the cloud. [14:14]

Q? What did the one sitting on the cloud do?

A. The one sitting on the cloud swung his sickle to harvest the earth. [14:16]

Q? What did the angel with the sickle do?

A. The angel with the sickle gathered the grape harvest of the earth and threw it into the wine vat of God's wrath. [14:19]

Q? What happened at the winepress of God?

A. The winepress was stomped and blood poured out from it. [14:20]

Revelation 15

Q? What did the seven angels that John saw have with them?

A. The seven angels had seven plagues, which are the final plagues. [15:1]

Q? Who was standing by the sea?

A. Those who had been victorious over the beast and his image were standing by the sea. [15:2]

Q? Whose song were those standing by the sea singing?

A. Those standing by the sea were singing the song of Moses and the song of the Lamb. [15:3]

Q? How were God's ways described in the song?

A. God's ways were described as just and true. [15:3]

Q? In the song, who will come and worship God?

A. All nations will come and worship God. [15:4]

Q? What then came out of the most holy place?

A. The seven angels with the seven plagues then came out of the most holy place. [15:6]

Q? What was given to the seven angels?

A. The seven angels were given seven bowls full of the wrath of God. [15:7]

Q? Until when could no one enter the most holy place?

A. Until the seven plagues were completed, no one could enter the most holy place. [15:8]

Revelation 16

Q? What were the seven angels told to do?

A. The seven angels were told to go and pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God's wrath. [16:1]

Q? What happened when the first bowl of God's wrath was poured out?

A. Ugly and painful sores came on the people who had the mark of the beast. [16:2]

Q? What happened when the second bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. The sea became like the blood of a dead person. [16:3]

Q? What happened when the third bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. The rivers and springs of water became blood. [16:4]

Q? Why was it true and just that God gave these people blood to drink?

A. It was true and just because these people had poured out the blood of God's saints and prophets. [16:6]

Q? What happened when the fourth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. The sun scorched the people with fire. [16:8]

Q? How did the people respond to these plagues?

A. The people did not repent or give God glory. [16:9]

Q? What happened when the fifth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. Darkness covered the kingdom of the beast. [16:10]

Q? What happened when the sixth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. The water of the Euphrates river was dried up to prepare the way for the kings from the east. [16:12]

Q? What were the three unclean spirits going out to do?

A. The three unclean spirits were going out to gather the kings of the world for the battle on the great day of God. [16:13-14]

Q? What was the name of the place where the kings of the world were brought together?

A. The name of the place was Armageddon. [16:16]

Q? What happened when the seventh bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A. A loud voice said, "It is done!" and there was lightning, thunder, and an earthquake. [16:17-18]

Q? At this time, what did God call to mind and do?

A. At this time, God called to mind Babylon the great, and he gave Babylon the cup filled with his wrath. [16:19]

Q? How did the people respond to these plagues?

A. The people cursed God. [16:21]

Revelation 17

Q? What did the angel say he would show John?

A. The angel said he would show John the condemnation of the great prostitute. [17:1]

Q? On what was the woman sitting?

A. The woman was sitting on a beast with seven heads and ten horns. [17:3]

Q? What was in the cup which the woman held in her hand?

A. The cup was full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality. [17:4]

Q? What was the woman's name?

A. The woman's name was, "Babylon the Great, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Detestable Things of the Earth". [17:5]

Q? With what was the woman drunk?

A. The woman was drunk with the blood of the saints and martyrs for Jesus. [17:6]

Q? From where did the beast come on which the woman sat?

A. The beast came up from the deep, bottomless pit. [17:8]

Q? What were the seven heads of the beast?

A. The seven heads were seven hills on which the woman was seated, and were also seven kings. [17:9-10]

Q? To where was the beast going?

A. The beast was going to destruction. [17:8, 11]

Q? What were the ten horns of the beast?

A. The ten horns were ten kings. [17:12]

Q? What would the kings and the beast do when they were of one mind?

A. When they were of one mind, they would make war against the Lamb. [17:14]

Q? What were the waters where the prostitute was seated?

A. The waters were peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages. [17:15]

Q? What would the kings and the beast do to the woman?

A. They would make the woman desolate and naked, devour her flesh, and burn her with fire. [17:16]

Q? What was the woman that John saw?

A. The woman that John saw was the great city that rules over the kings of the earth. [17:18]

Revelation 18

Q? What announcement did the angel with great authority make?

A. The angel announced that Babylon the great had fallen. [18:1-2]

Q? What did the voice from heaven tell God's people to do?

A. The voice told God's people to come out from Babylon and to not share in her sins. [18:4]

Q? What amount of payment did God give back to Babylon for what she had done?

A. God paid back Babylon double for what she had done. [18:6]

Q? What plagues overtook Babylon in one day?

A. Death, mourning, and famine overtook Babylon in one day and she was consumed with fire. [18:8]

Q? How did the kings and merchants of the earth respond when they saw Babylon's judgment?

A. When the kings and merchants of the earth saw Babylon's judgment, they wept and wailed over her. [18:9]

Q? For what did Babylon long, which vanished in a single hour?

A. Babylon longed for luxury and splendor, which vanished in a single hour. [18:14]

Q? Why did the kings, merchants and ship's captains stand at a distance from Babylon at her time of judgment?

A. They stood at a distance because they were afraid of her torment. [18:9-10, 15, 17]

Q? What question did the ship's captains ask about Babylon?

A. The ship's captains asked, "What city is like the great city?" [18:18]

Q? What were the saints, apostles, and prophets told to do when Babylon was judged by God?

A. The saints, apostles, and prophets were told to rejoice when Babylon was judged by God. [18:20]

Q? After her judgment, when would Babylon be seen again?

A. After her judgment, Babylon would be seen no more. [18:21]

Q? What was found in the great city Babylon for which she was judged?

A. The blood of prophets, saints, and all who have been killed on the earth was found. [18:24]

Revelation 19

Q? What did the loud voice in heaven say about God's judgments?

A. The loud voice in heaven said that God's judgments were true and just. [19:1-2]

Q? Why did God judge the great prostitute?

A. God judged the great prostitute because she corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality and shed the blood of God's servants. [19:2]

Q? What will happen to the great prostitute forever and ever?

A. Smoke will rise from the great prostitute forever and ever. [19:3]

Q? What were the servants of God who fear him told to do?

A. The servants of God were told to praise him. [19:5]

Q? Why did the voice say that the servants of God should rejoice and be very happy?

A. The servants of God were told to rejoice because the wedding celebration of the Lamb had come. [19:7]

Q? With what is the bride of the Lamb dressed?

A. The bride is dressed in fine linen, which is the righteous acts of God's holy people. [19:8]

Q? What did the angel say that the testimony about Jesus was?

A. The angel said that the testimony about Jesus was the spirit of prophecy. [19:10]

Q? What is the name of the one John saw riding the white horse?

A. John saw the Word of God riding the white horse. [19:11-13]

Q? How does the Word of God strike down the nations?

A. Out of the mouth of the Word of God goes a sharp sword which strikes down the nations. [19:15]

Q? What is written on the Word of God's robe and thigh?

A. On his robe and thigh is written, "King of Kings and Lord of Lords". [19:16]

Q? What were the birds flying overhead called to eat at the great supper?

A. The birds were called to eat the flesh of kings, commanders, mighty men, horses and their riders, and all men. [19:18]

Q? What were the beast and the kings of the earth setting out to do?

A. They were setting out to make war with the Word of God and his army. [19:19]

Q? What happened to the beast and the false prophet?

A. The beast and the false prophet were both thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur. [19:20]

Q? What happened to the rest of those fighting against the Word of God?

A. The rest were killed by the sword coming out of the mouth of the Word of God. [19:21]

Revelation 20

Q? What did the angel coming down from heaven have with him?

A. The angel had the key to the endless pit and a great chain in his hand. [20:1]

Q? What did the angel do with Satan?

A. The angel threw Satan into the bottomless pit. [20:3]

Q? How long would Satan remain bound?

A. Satan would remain bound for a thousand years. [20:2-3]

Q? What would Satan not be able to do while he was bound?

A. Satan would not be able to deceive the nations while he was bound. [20:3]

Q? What happened to those who had refused to receive the mark of the beast?

A. Those who had refused to receive the mark of the beast came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. [20:4]

Q? When would the rest of the dead come to life?

A. The rest of the dead would come to life when the thousand years were ended. [20:5]

Q? What would those who took part in the first resurrection do?

A. Those who took part in the first resurrection would be priests of God and Christ and would reign with him for a thousand years. [20:6]

Q? What will Satan do at the end of the thousand years?

A. At the end of the thousand years, Satan will be released to go out to deceive the nations. [20:8]

Q? What happened when the camp of the saints was surrounded?

A. When the camp of the saints was surrounded, fire came down from heaven and devoured Gog and Magog. [20:9]

Q? What was done with the devil at this time?

A. The devil was thrown into the lake of fire to be tormented forever. [20:10]

Q? By what were the dead judged before the great white throne?

A. The dead were judged by what was recorded in the books, the result of what they had done. [20:12]

Q? What is the second death?

A. The second death is the lake of fire. [20:14]

Q? What happened to all who were not written in the Book of Life?

A. All who were not found written in the Book of Life were thrown into the lake of fire. [20:15]

Revelation 21

Q? What did John see had happened to the first heaven and earth?

A. John saw that the first heaven and earth had passed away. [21:1]

Q? What had replaced the first heaven and earth?

A. A new heaven and earth had replaced the first heaven and earth. [21:1]

Q? What came down from heaven?

A. The holy city, new Jerusalem, came down from heaven. [21:2]

Q? Where did the voice from the throne say that God would now dwell?

A. The voice said that God would now dwell with human beings. [21:3]

Q? What had now passed away?

A. Death, grieving, crying, and pain had now passed away. [21:4]

Q? What name did the one seated on the throne call himself?

A. The one seated on the throne called himself the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. [21:6]

Q? What happens to the faithless, sexually immoral, and idolaters?

A. The faithless, sexually immoral, and idolaters have their place in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. [21:8]

Q? What is the bride, the wife of the Lamb?

A. The bride, the wife of the Lamb, is the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God. [21:10]

Q? What was written on the gates of new Jerusalem?

A. The names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel were written on the gates of new Jerusalem. [21:12]

Q? What was written on the foundations of new Jerusalem?

A. The names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb were written on the foundations of new Jerusalem. [21:14]

Q? In what shape was new Jerusalem laid out?

A. New Jerusalem was laid out in a square. [21:16]

Q? Of what was the city built?

A. The city was built of pure gold, like clear glass. [21:18]

Q? What is the temple in new Jerusalem?

A. The temple in new Jerusalem is the Lord God and the Lamb. [21:22]

Q? What is the source of light in new Jerusalem?

A. The source of light in new Jerusalem is the glory of God and the Lamb. [21:23]

Q? What will never enter new Jerusalem?

A. Nothing unclean will ever enter new Jerusalem. [21:27]

Revelation 22

Q? What did John see flowing from the throne of God?

A. John saw the river of the water of life flowing from the throne of God. [22:1]

Q? For what are the leaves of the tree of life?

A. The leaves of the tree of life are for the healing of the nations. [22:2]

Q? What will there no longer be in the city?

A. There will no longer be any curse, and there will be no more night. [22:3,5]

Q? Where will the throne of God and of the Lamb be?

A. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city. [22:3]

Q? What must a person do to be blessed by this book?

A. A person must obey the words of the prophecy of this book to be blessed. [22:7]

Q? What did the angel tell John to do when John prostrated himself at the feet of the angel?

A. The angel told John to worship God. [22:8-9]

Q? Why was John told not to seal up the words of the prophecy of this book?

A. John was told not to seal up the words of the prophecy of this book because the time was near. [22:10]

Q? What did the Lord say he was bringing with him when he comes?

A. The Lord said he was bringing his reward with him when he comes. [22:12]

Q? What must those do who want to have the right to eat from the tree of life?

A. Those who want to have the right to eat from the tree of life must wash their robes. [22:14]

Q? How does Jesus say he is related to King David?

A. Jesus says he is the root and descendant of King David. [22:16]

Q? What will happen to anyone who adds to the prophecy of this book?

A. Anyone who adds to the prophecy of this book will receive the plagues written about in this book. [22:18]

Q? What will happen to anyone who takes away from the prophecy of this book?

A. Anyone who takes away from the prophecy of this book will have his share of the tree of life taken away. [22:19]

Q? What are Jesus' last words in this book?

A. Jesus' last words are, "Yes! I am coming soon". [22:20]

Q? What is the last word in this book?

A. The last word in this book is "Amen". [22:21]

translationWords

twelve tribes of Israel

Definition:

The term, “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes are slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-06]**”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **[28-02]** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **[34-07]**”The religious leader prayed like this, ”Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles, “Almighty God” or “God Almighty” or “Lord Almighty” or “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include, “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

antichrist

Definition:

The term “antichrist” refers to a person or teaching that is against Jesus Christ and his work. There are many antichrists in the world.

- The apostle John wrote that a person is the antichrist if he deceives people by saying that Jesus is not the Messiah or if he denies that Jesus is both God and human.
- The Bible also teaches that there is a general spirit of antichrist in the world which opposes Jesus’ work.
- The New Testament book of Revelation explains that there will be a man called “the antichrist” who will be revealed in the end times. This man will attempt to destroy God’s people, but he will be defeated by Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “Christ-opposer” or “enemy of Christ” or “person who is against Christ.”
- The phrase, “spirit of the antichrist” could also be translated as, “spirit that is against Christ” or “(someone) teaching lies about Christ” or “attitude of believing lies about Christ” or “spirit that teaches lies about Christ.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel which was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or, “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [israel](#), [twelvetribeisrael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Rome](#), [Paul](#), [Ephesus](#), other)

Bible References:

Waiting

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression, “to avenge” someone could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by, “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Euphrates](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Midianites](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Peor](#), [Mount Peor](#), [Baal Peor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bear**Definition:**

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include, “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)
- [Next chunk: review-publish](#) | [publish-current](#)

Bible References:

Waiting

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

believer

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- [47-14] They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

beloved**Definition:**

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blameless**Definition:**

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as, to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include, “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as, “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase, “bond of peace” means, “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as, “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as, “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translate as, “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Book of Life

Definition:

The term “Book of Life” is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as “the Lamb’s Book of Life.” This could be translated as “the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God.” The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people’s sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for “book” can also mean, “scroll” or “letter” or “writing” or “legal document.” It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: [everlasting](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [sacrifice](#), [scroll](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include, “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means, “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: [armor](#), [high priest](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [pierce](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [temple](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

breathe, breath

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bride**Definition:**

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#), [Church](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See: [bride](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burden

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

captive, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [believer](#), [Christian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **[46-09]** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **[46-10]** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- [47-13] The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

clothe, clothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [promise](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

condemn, condemnation**Definition:**

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

creature**Definition:**

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown**Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crucify

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [39-11] But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- [39-12] Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- [40-01] After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- [40-04] Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- [43-06] ”Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- [43-09] ”You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, ”This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-09]** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **[02-11]** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **[04-04]** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **[39-07]** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **[50-16]** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [angel](#), [archangel](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-09]** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- **[32-08]** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **[47-05]** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the **demon** left her.
- **[49-02]** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

detestable, detest

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as, “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devour**Definition:**

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephesus

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Timothy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God, which is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

Waiting

fire**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action as in, “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include, “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison, “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor as in, “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression, “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears soak my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forever**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fountain, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gad

Facts:

Gad is the name of one of the sons of Jacob, that is, Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The cities, Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written, "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glorify

Definition:

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “give glory.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as, “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [exalt](#), [exaltation](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

grape

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Greek, Grecian

Facts:

The term “Greek” refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term “Grecian” means “Greek-speaking.”

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as “Greeks” in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase “Grecian Jews” referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the “Hebraic Jews” who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate “Grecian” could include, “Greek-speaking” or “culturally Greek” or “Greek.”
- When referring to non-Jews, “Greek” could be translated as “Gentile.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hades, sheol

Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hail

Facts:

This term usually refers to small or large lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. A different word, “hail” is used in greeting someone and can mean, “hello” or “greetings to you.”

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called “hailstones.”
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word “hail” that is a formal greeting in older English literally means “rejoice” and could be translated as “Greetings!” or “Hello!”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hard, hardness, harden

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions, “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as, “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include, “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as, “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as, “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as, “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby. See the link to “labor pains” below.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harp

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, usually having a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-14] One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- [21-10] He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- [26-06] Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- [26-08] They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- [32-14] She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- [44-03] Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- [49-02]] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hebrew

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The Old Testament was originally written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms in their original context in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jewish](#), [Jewish Leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin, and trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [hades](#), [sheol](#), [abyss](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[50-14]** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **[50-15]** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

holy city

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “holy city” refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for “holy” and “city” that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is, “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as, “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase, “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as, “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

horn, horns

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: , [authority](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [deer](#), [doe](#), [buck](#), [roebuck](#), [fawn](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [royal](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hour

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this meant that it was the appointed time that God had decided long ago that this would happen.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase, “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as, “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as, “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See: [biblical time: hour](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-05]** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **[18-02]** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[20-07]** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[42-08]** ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- **[26-08]** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **[31-03]** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **[38-02]** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **[40-08]** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[42-11]** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were the sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend to Jesus.
- The apostle John wrote five of the books in the New Testament: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zebedee](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[36-01]** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **[44-06]** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **[44-07]** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **[44-09]** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kind, kinds

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include, “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”
- The word “species” would *not* be an accurate translation of this term, since “kind” is a more general category, with several species within it.

Bible References:

Waiting

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor pains, in labor

Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), [laborer](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-07]** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **[24-06]** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **[45-08]** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

leopard

Facts:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), [Daniel](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.

- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.

- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include, "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [grain](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [Daniel](#), [messenger](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-08] Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- [19-14] God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- [37-10] Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- [43-06] "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- [49-02] Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali is used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. It was also on the western border of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe is mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05]"This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07]"This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prostrate**Definition:**

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include, “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase, “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as, “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translate as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: [awe](#), [awesome](#), [bow](#), [bow down](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reap, reaper**Definition:**

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”). (See link to “harvest” page for more translation suggestions.)

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

reed, reeds

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

rest

Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “resurrection” could also be translated as, “coming back to life” or, “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Leah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

robe**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. This would prevent anyone else from opening the scroll and writing on it.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal, to seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seal, to seal

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent**Definition:**

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and which moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous, but they deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before that they had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Eden](#), [garden of Eden](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [offspring](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service**Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there are several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah was named Simeon. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan, an area that was part of Judah's inheritance.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well-watered and fertile, so that is where Lot chose to live when he first settled in Caanan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Son of God, the Son, Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin “Son” will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God”, especially when in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [en:obe:kt:jesus]], [son](#), [son of](#), [sons of God](#)))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **[24-09]** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”?
- **[31-08]** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **[37-05]** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”

- **[42-10]** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, ”Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title, “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” can be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It can also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addresses Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he says, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man,” this could be translated as, “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in, “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus is talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as, “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as, “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include, “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

soul

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- In the New Testament, this word literally referred to a stick or other object that would trigger a trap or snare to snap shut on an animal that stumbled over it.
- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as, “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See: [stumble](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sulfur

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow-colored substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include, "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See: [Gomorrah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [Lot](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [Sodom](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [cure](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [pray](#), [prayer](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [column](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **[14-08]** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **[18-02]** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

testimony, testify

Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thief, thieves, robber**Facts:**

The terms “thief” and “thieves” refer in general to people who steal money or property from other people. The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him, stealing from them the good things God has planned for them to experience.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

time

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

torment**Facts:**

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause someone to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering also may take the form of spiritual and emotional pain as experienced by Job.
- According to the book of Revelation, people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as, “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribulation**Definition:**

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- The New Testament says that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The Bible uses the term “the Great Tribulation” to describe a period of time before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as, “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [earthly](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unrighteous, unrighteousness

Definition:

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice**Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

waste, wasteland**Definition:**

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

word

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless**Definition:**

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

written**Definition:**

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

First, Second or Third Person

This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

Description

Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
 “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Apostrophe

This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Reason this is a translation issue: Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' "** (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)
 - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This answers the question: When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from another or they can give more information or a reminder about an item. Other languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing. When people who speak these languages hear a phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another.

Description

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from other possible items, or they can give more information about an item. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know or assume.

- "Mary gave some of the food to *her sister who was very thankful*.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.
- "Mary gave some of the food to her sister, *who was very thankful*."
 - This same phrase can be used to inform us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing one item from another. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish one item from other possible items.

Examples from the Bible

1. Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate *the holy place* from *the most holy place*. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to *the woman who bore him*.
(Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

2. Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these. (See: [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#))

for *your righteous judgments* are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgement from his unrighteous judgement, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can *Sarah, who is ninety years old*, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, see [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

See [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for how to translate phrases that inform or remind.

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Order of Events

This answers the question: Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*
- *Verbs*

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just wrote about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This sounds like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? ([Revelation 5:2](#) ULB)

The seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on [Verbs](#))
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

- **²⁰ But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
 - ²⁰ "But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ *Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.*"
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** ([Revelation 5:2](#) ULB)
 - "Who is worthy to open the scroll *after* breaking its seals?"

2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

- **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸ "Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua *had commanded* the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

- **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸⁻¹⁰ "Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets..."
- **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** ([Revelation 5:2](#) ULB)

- “Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?”

You may also want to watch the 6 minute video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/Fp9qgVoTwss>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AljK2GUdXxc>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Background Information*
- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*
- *Verse Bridges*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Generic Noun Phrases

This answers the question: What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things.

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

Different languages have different ways of showing that a phrase refers to something in general. Translators should use ways of doing this that are natural in their language.

Description

Generic noun phrases refers to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
 - **Yahweh gives favor to *a good man*, but he condemns *a man who makes evil plans*.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
 - “Yahweh gives favor to *the good man*, but he condemns *the man who makes evil plans*.” (Proverbs 12:2)

The following examples show how the strategies may be applied to a noun phrase that has “the” in it. Use the strategy that is most natural in your language:

- **People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain*.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
 - “People curse *a man* who refuses to sell them grain”
 3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
 - “People curse *any man* who refuses to sell them grain”
 4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
 - “People curse *men* who refuse to sell them grain”
 5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
 - “People curse *whoever* refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *When Masculine Words Include Women*

Go and Come

This answers the question: What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come.” For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming”, while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring.” For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming”, while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.”

Reason this is a translation issue: If the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving in.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away and he wanted his servant to go to them.

When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses and the people were in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet and implored him to *come* to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Use the word “go”, “come”, “take” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the words that would be natural in your language.

- **But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
 - But you will be free from my oath if you *go* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

- **When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
 - “When you have *arrived* in the land that Yahweh your God gives you possess it and live in it,”
- **Yahweh said to Noah, “*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
 - “Yahweh said to Noah, “*Enter*, you and all your household, into the ark”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Inclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees*.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Reflexive Pronouns

This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

Description

Reflexive pronouns are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Translating Son and Father

This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Biblical Volume

This answers the question: How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain).

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	kor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

2. Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters²." The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1]one bath
- ^[2]one home
- ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty amounts* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty amounts* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty baskets* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty jars* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

- "whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty liters* of grain, there were only *ten liters*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty liters* of wine, there were only *twenty liters*."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*
- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Biblical Weight

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The exact weights are uncertain, but the approximate amounts are:

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	-	0.57 kilograms
mina	50 shekels	570 grams	0.57 kilograms
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 sekels*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *2,400 kilograms*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *5,300 pounds*"

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.¹" The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Decimal Numbers](#)
- [Fractions](#)

Fractions

This answers the question: What are fractions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to parts of a thing or to groups within a larger group of people or things. Some languages do not have this kind of number.

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer *a third* of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to divide a hin container into three parts and fill up only one part and offer that.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they don’t use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to *one half* of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given them an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other *half*, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill *a third* of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare *a fourth* of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to divide a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

- ***A third of the ocean became red like blood*** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
 - ”It was like they *divided* the ocean *into three parts*, and *one part* of the ocean became blood.”
- ***then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - ”then you must *divide* an ephah of fine flour *into ten parts* and mix *three of those parts* with half a hin of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.”

2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- ***two thirds of a shekel*** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
 - *"eight grams of silver"* (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
- ***three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - *"6.5 liters of finely ground flour mixed with about two liters of olive oil."* (Numbers 15:9 UDB)

3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- ***three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.*** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - *"six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil."*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Decimal Numbers*

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Symbolic Action

This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹]

[¹] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

- ^[1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Copy or Borrow Words

This answers the question: What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Sometimes the Bible talks about things that your language may not have a word for. It also talks about people and places that you may not have names for. One way you can deal with this problem is “borrow”, or copy, the word from another language into your own language. This page tells how to do that.

Description

Sometimes the Bible talks about things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also talks about people and places that you may not have a name for. When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways of dealing with words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#)).

Examples from the Bible

He saw a *fig* tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, you might not already have a name for this kind of tree.

Above him were the *seraphs* each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not already have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of *Malachi*. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.

- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

- **Zephaniah** - This is a man’s name.

- “Zephaniah”

3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

- **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the “z”, you could use “s”. If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f”. Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay”.

- “Sefania”
- “Sefanaia”
- “Sefanaya”

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Symbolic Prophecy

This answers the question: What is symbolic prophecy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*
- *prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess*
- *Symbolic Language*

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See: [dream](#) and [vision](#).) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images are a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Some of these writings are presented as poetry and some are presented as narrative. They usually use the past tense because the prophets tell about what they saw in their visions or dreams. But they are about things that would happen in the future. Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When the same image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.

- Sometimes it is difficult to understand what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest.

His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16)

As I looked,
thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
and *the hair of his head was like pure wool.* (Daniel 7:9 ULB)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULB)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULB)

Background Information

This answers the question: What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Order of Events*
- *Writing Styles*

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. Sometimes a writer may give some background information to help his listeners understand the story. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story. The story teller and translator need to tell the story in a way that people will know whether an event is background information and will be able to understand what order the events happened in.

Description

Every story has a storyline. The storyline tells a series of events mostly in the time order that the events happened. It is full of action verbs that moves the reader along the storyline. Occasionally an author may take a break from the storyline to share something of interest. This break is called **background information**. The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because *their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!* They walked for hours through low bushes until they found a wild pig. They shot the pig and killed it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope *they had brought with them*, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that *it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.*

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter *was* the best hunter in the village" and "*it was* his own pig."

Sometimes a storyteller makes a break in the story to tell about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

A writer may use background information

- to help their listeners be interested in the story.
- to help their listeners understand something in the story.
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story.

- to tell the setting of a story. Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place.
 - when the story takes place.
 - who is present when the story begins.
 - what is happening when the story begins.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to know whether or not the events in the Bible happened in the same order that they are told.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram *was* eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, *was* about thirty years of age. He *was* the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study the grammar and punctuation of your language. Observe how your language presents background information in writings. Follow those same grammar rules when you translate.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies applied

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB)- English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - “When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*

End of Story

This page answers the question: What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Writing Styles](#)
- [Background Information](#)

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

Different purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue: Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If translators do not use their language's ways of doing this, readers may not know

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story.

Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. to summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. *In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.* (Acts 27:44 ULB)

2. to give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. *So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.* (Acts 19:19-20 ULB)

3. to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house. (Luke 1:56 ULB)

4. to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. *But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.* (Luke 2:18-19 ULB)

5. to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words. (Luke 11:53-54 ULB)

Introduction of New and Old Participants

This answers the question: Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are new participants. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are old participants. In order to make your translation clear and natural, you will need to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or ones that they have already read about.

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are *new participants*. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are *old participants*.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus... This man came to Jesus at night time... Jesus replied to him (John 3:1)

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to properly refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Sometimes a new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that that author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULB)

Sometimes a new participant is simply mentioned in relation to another person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. *His wife* was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULB)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the book of Judges, the first time that the angel of Yahweh is mentioned, he is referred to simply by his title.

The angel of Yahweh went up from Gilgal to Bochim, (Judges 2:1 ULB)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story, may then be referred to with a pronoun, with a noun phrase, or by name or title. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so *she* had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULB)

In the example below, Manoah’s wife is referred to with the noun phrase “the woman”.

The angel of Yahweh appeared to *the woman* and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULB)

In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name.

Then *Manoah* prayed to Yahweh

Some languages have something on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough of a clue for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See: [Verbs](#))

In some languages people do not always have to use a noun or noun phrase to refer to an old participant when that participant is the subject of a sentence. People can understand it from the context.

Translation Strategies

1. If it is a new participant, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If it is a new participant, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

- **Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULB)- Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he hasn't been introduced yet might be too quick in some languages.
 - "There was a man named Joseph, from Cyprus. He was a Levite and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement)."
 - "There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement."

2. If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

- **It happened when *he* finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."** (Luke 11:1 ULB) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.
 - "It happened when *Jesus* finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

- **Joseph's master took *Joseph* and put *him* in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and *Joseph* stayed there.** (Genesis 39:20 ULB) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it odd to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.
 - "Joseph's master took *him* and put *him* in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and *he* stayed there in the prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- **Pronouns - When to Use Them**

Quotations and Quote Margins

This answers the question: What are quote margins and where should I put them?

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, who they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and who they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, who they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and who they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the quote. In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between to parts of the quote. The quote margins are underlined below.

- *She said*, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” *she said*
- “The food is ready,” *she said*. “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said”.

But his mother *answered* and *said*, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULB)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“_”).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said”.

Examples from the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

Zechariah said to the angel, “How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old.” (Luke 1:18 ULB)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and *they said to him*, “Teacher, what must we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULB)

He to them, “Do not collect more money than you are supposed to.” (Luke 3:13 ULB)

Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” *he said*. (Amos 7:3 ULB)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

“I will hide my face from them,” *he said*, “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULB)

“Therefore, those who can,” *he said*, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULB)

“For look, days are coming”—*this is Yahweh’s declaration*—“when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel” (Jeremiah 30:3 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.

- **“Therefore, those who can,” *he said*, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”** (Acts 25:5 ULB)
 - *He said* “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
 - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” *he said*.
 - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” *he said*. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

- **But his mother *answered and said*, “No, instead he will be called John.”** (Luke 1:60 ULB)
 - But his mother *replied*, “No, instead he will be called John.”
 - But his mother *said*, “No, instead he will be called John.”
 - But his mother *answered* like this. “No, instead he will be called John,” *she said*.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Direct and Indirect Quotations*

Symbolic Language

This answers the question: What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB) This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll.

One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by calling it another. Another purpose of symbolism is to tell people about something that they would be able to understand while hiding the true meaning from others.

Reason this is a translation issue: People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principle: When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation. It is also important not to explain it more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night *a fourth animal*, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had *large iron teeth*; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had *ten horns*. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be *a fourth kingdom* on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth,

and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom *ten kings* will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw *seven golden lampstands*. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand *seven stars*, and coming out of his mouth was *a sharp two-edged sword*.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: *the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches*, and *the seven lampstands are the seven churches*. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

- "After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns."³ The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ ^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ ^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ ^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.